



## **Level 3 Award in Healthcare and Social Care Support**

### **Qualification Specification**

# Contents

	<b>Page</b>
Introduction	3
Qualification profile	3
Qualification structure	4
Centre requirements	11
Support for candidates	11
Assessment	12
Internal quality assurance	12
Adjustments to assessment	12
Results enquiries and appeals	13
Certification	13
Learning outcomes and assessment criteria	14

## Introduction

The Level 2 and Level 3 suite of Healthcare and Social Care Support Skills qualifications are aimed at individuals in a wide range of work environments where they are required to undertake a changing range or a limited number of Healthcare and Social Care tasks.

For example, workers in community or care home settings may be required to carry out a limited number of tasks, their job role may not enable them to meet the standards of a full Healthcare and Social Care Diploma but their industry requires them to be able to demonstrate their competence and skills.

ProQual Level 2 Award in Healthcare and Social Care Support Skills  
ProQual Level 2 Certificate in Healthcare and Social Care Support  
ProQual Level 2 Diploma in Healthcare and Social Care Support  
**ProQual Level 3 Award in Healthcare and Social Care Support**  
ProQual Level 3 Certificate in Healthcare and Social Care Support  
ProQual Level 3 Diploma in Healthcare and Social Care Support

The awarding organisation for these qualifications is ProQual Awarding Body and the regulatory body is the Office of Qualifications and Examinations Regulation (Ofqual). The specification for these qualifications has been approved by the Welsh Government for use by centres in Wales and by the Council for the Curriculum Examinations and Assessment (CCEA) for use by centres in Northern Ireland. The qualifications have been accredited onto the Regulated Qualifications Framework (RQF).

## Qualification Profile

Qualification title	<b>ProQual Level 3 Award Healthcare and Social Care Support Skills</b>
Ofqual qualification number	600/6805/X
Level	Level 3
Total qualification time	100 hours
Guided learning hours	50
Assessment	Pass or fail Internally assessed and verified by centre staff External quality assurance by ProQual verifiers
Qualification start date	1/10/12
Qualification end date	

## Entry Requirements

There are no formal entry requirements for this qualification.

Centres should carry out an **initial assessment** of candidate skills and knowledge to identify any gaps and help plan the assessment.

## Qualification Structure

Candidates must achieve 6 credits from any combination of units.

Level 3 Units				
Unit Reference Number	Unit Title	Unit Level	Credit Value	GLH
A/601/0121	Work with babies and young children to promote their development and learning	3	6	45
A/601/1429	Engage in personal development in health, social care or children's and young people's settings	3	3	10
A/601/5190	Support individuals with multiple conditions and/or disabilities	3	4	31
A/601/7909	Support individuals who are bereaved	3	4	30
A/601/8980	Prepare for and carry out extended feeding techniques	3	4	27
A/601/9028	Provide support to continue recommended therapies	3	3	20
A/602/0972	Insert and secure nasogastric tubes	3	4	30
A/602/3516	Develop positive relationships with children and young people	3	4	30
A/602/4018	Provide advice and information to enable parents to promote the health and well-being of their newborn babies	3	3	22
A/602/4410	Facilitate and monitor housing and accommodation services to support individuals with mental health needs	3	5	32
A/602/4519	Collaborate in the assessment of environmental and social support in the community	3	4	23
D/501/3826	Influencing Others at Work	3	1	6
D/601/0130	Care for the physical and nutritional needs of babies and young children	3	6	45
D/601/5750	Support families who have a child with a disability	3	3	23
D/601/7904	Support individuals to manage their finances	3	3	20
D/601/8860	Obtain venous blood samples	3	3	24
D/601/9491	Implement therapeutic group activities	3	4	25

D/602/1032	Collate and communicate health information to individuals	3	3	20
D/602/3122	Provide information and advice to individuals on eating to maintain optimum nutritional status	3	5	38
D/602/3198	Assist in the implementation of programmes to increase mobility, movement and functional independence	3	4	28
D/602/3959	Receive and handle clinical specimens within the sterile field	3	4	30
D/602/3976	Prepare anaesthetic environment and provide support for pre and post-operative anaesthesia and recovery	3	5	38
D/602/4013	Make recommendations for the use of physical resources in a health setting	3	5	33
F/502/3412	Maintaining quality standards in the health sector	3	2	13
F/601/3473	Understand Models of Disability	3	3	26
F/601/7927	Support individuals to access and use services and facilities	3	4	25
F/601/8138	Promote and implement health and safety in health and social care	3	6	43
F/602/0049	Support young people with a disability to make the transition into adulthood	3	5	40
F/602/0097	Understand mental well-being and mental health promotion	3	3	14
F/602/3095	Carry out vision screening	3	4	27
F/602/3128	Assist professionals to support individuals from diverse linguistic and cultural backgrounds to access speech and language therapy services	3	5	35
F/602/3517	Implement hydrotherapy programmes for individuals and groups	3	5	35
F/602/3520	Deliver exercise sessions to improve individuals' health and wellbeing	3	5	32
F/602/3954	Provide support to the surgical team when preparing individuals for operative and invasive procedures	3	4	32
H/601/8049	Facilitate person centred assessment, planning, implementation and review	3	6	45
H/601/8147	Work in partnership with families to support individuals	3	4	27
H/601/9492	Support individuals to develop and run support groups	3	3	24
H/602/0965	Monitor own work practice in health, social care or children's and young people's settings	3	3	20
H/602/1033	Perform first line calibration on clinical equipment to ensure it is fit for use	3	3	20

H/602/3123	Monitor and review individuals progress in relation to maintaining optimum nutritional status	3	3	26
H/602/3168	Give presentations to groups	3	4	26
H/602/3980	Support individuals in undertaking their chosen activities	3	4	24
H/602/4014	Control the use of physical resources in a health setting	3	3	25
H/602/4708	Support children and young people experiencing transitions	3	3	28
J/601/1434	Promote communication in health, social care or children's and young people's settings	3	3	10
J/502/1631	Contribute to the prevention of aggressive and abusive behaviour of people	3	4	26
J/502/3413	Service improvement in the health sector	3	3	20
J/601/3538	Understand the process and experience of dementia	3	3	22
J/601/6150	Understand Physical Disability	3	3	22
J/601/8657	Support individuals with a learning disability to access healthcare	3	3	25
J/601/8979	Undertake urethral catheterisation processes	3	4	28
J/601/9470	Promote good practice in handling information in health and social care settings	3	2	16
J/602/0103	Understand mental health problems	3	3	14
J/602/0960	Perform routine Electrocardiograph (ECG) Procedures	3	4	30
J/602/3101	Undertake treatments and dressings of lesions and wounds	3	4	25
J/602/3521	Adapt and fit healthcare equipment, medical devices, assistive technology, or products, to meet individuals' needs	3	6	37
J/602/4006	Administer oral nutritional products to individuals	3	5	35
K/601/3483	Promote effective communication with individuals with sensory loss	3	4	30
K/601/6190	Work with other professionals and agencies to support individuals with physical disability	3	3	23
K/601/7906	Support individuals to access housing and accommodation services	3	4	24
K/602/2684	Identify information requirements in a health context	3	4	30
K/602/2720	Prepare and reproduce permanent radiographic images	3	4	23
K/602/3124	Develop and prepare speech and language therapy resources for alternative and augmentative communication (AAC) use	3	4	25
K/602/3169	Carry out wound drainage care	3	4	32
K/602/3950	Prepare and provide surgical instrumentation and supplementary items for the surgical team	3	6	43

K/602/4015	Care for a newly born baby when the mother is unable to do so	3	4	32
L/601/1693	Understand Child and Young Person Development	3	4	30
L/601/8028	Provide support to maintain and develop skills for everyday life	3	4	28
L/601/8644	Facilitate learning and development activities to meet individual needs and preferences	3	5	35
L/601/9034	Enable individuals with behavioural difficulties to develop strategies to change their behaviour	3	8	41
L/602/2676	Reprocess endoscopy equipment	3	4	30
L/602/3097	Support individuals with cognition and learning difficulties	3	5	34
L/602/3519	Assist in testing individuals' abilities prior to planning physical activities	3	5	38
L/602/4007	Support individuals to manage dysphagia	3	5	35
L/602/4010	Provide advice on foot care for individuals with diabetes	3	3	23
L/602/4489	Transport, transfer and position individuals and equipment within the perioperative environment	3	5	32
M/601/3467	Understand Sensory Loss	3	3	21
M/601/5817	Support families who are affected by Acquired Brain Injury	3	3	30
M/601/7907	Support individuals during a period of change	3	4	29
M/602/1004	Perform intravenous cannulation	3	4	34
M/602/2671	Care for individuals with urethral catheters	3	4	30
M/602/2685	Conduct routine maintenance on clinical equipment	3	4	30
M/602/3125	Assist and support individuals to use alternative and augmentative communication systems (AAC)	3	5	35
M/602/3934	Measure and record individuals' body fluid balance in a perioperative environment	3	4	23
M/602/4016	Support parents/carers to interact with and care for their newborn baby	3	4	30
M/602/4520	Deliver training through demonstration and instruction	3	3	21
R/601/1436	Principles for implementing duty of care in health, social care or children's and young people's settings	3	1	5
R/601/1694	Promote Child and Young Person Development	3	3	25
R/601/3526	Develop and sustain effective working relationships with staff in other agencies	3	4	24
R/601/8662	Undertake physiological measurements	3	3	23
R/602/2677	Undertake stoma care	3	4	30
R/602/2680	Assure the effective functioning of radiographic image processing equipment	3	4	25
R/602/3926	Operate equipment for intraoperative cell salvage blood collection	3	5	40

R/602/3943	Advise and inform individuals on managing their condition	3	5	31
R/602/4008	Assist others to monitor individuals' progress in managing dysphagia	3	5	38
R/602/4011	Support carers to meet the care needs of individuals	3	5	30
T/600/9386	Maintain pharmaceutical stock	3	3	4
T/601/3440	Anatomy and Physiology for Maternity Support Workers	3	2	20
T/601/3468	Receive prescriptions from individuals	3	3	15
T/601/5317	Understand how to support individuals with autistic spectrum conditions	3	3	28
T/601/8282	Support Individuals with Specific Communication Needs	3	5	35
T/601/8850	Obtain and test capillary blood samples	3	4	30
T/601/9495	Support individuals at the end of life	3	7	53
T/602/0968	Contribute to effective multidisciplinary team working	3	3	20
T/602/2686	Analyse and present health related data and information	3	4	30
T/602/3093	Remove wound drains	3	4	27
T/602/3126	Develop activities and materials to enable individuals to reach specific communication goals	3	5	38
T/602/3949	Operate equipment for intraoperative cell salvage blood processing and complete intraoperative cell salvage blood process	3	5	39
T/602/4017	Support parents/carers and those in a parental role to care for babies during their first year	3	5	36
T/602/4325	Obtain a client history	3	3	22
T/602/4521	Manage the availability of physical resources to meet service delivery needs in a health setting	3	5	33
Y/501/0598	Administer medication to individuals, and monitor the effects	3	5	30
Y/600/9395	Undertake an in-process accuracy check of assembled prescribed items prior to the final accuracy check	3	4	11
Y/601/1437	Promote equality and inclusion in health, social care or children's and young people's settings	3	2	8
Y/601/6167	Understand the impact of Acquired Brain Injury on individuals	3	3	28
Y/601/7903	Support individuals to live at home	3	4	25
Y/601/8145	Promote person centred approaches in health and social care	3	6	41
Y/601/8825	interact with and support individuals using telecommunications	3	5	36
Y/601/9022	Undertake tissue viability risk assessments	3	3	26

Y/602/0963	Manufacture equipment or medical devices for individuals within healthcare	3	4	30
Y/602/3099	Provide support for individuals with communication and interaction difficulties	3	5	39
Y/602/3121	Monitor individuals' progress in relation to managing their body weight and nutrition	3	3	26
Y/602/3197	Assist in implementing treatment programmes for individuals with severely reduced movement/mobility	3	5	29
Y/602/3930	Assist in the delivery of perioperative care and support to individuals	3	4	31
Y/602/4009	Examine the feet of individuals with diabetes	3	4	32
F/502/1224	Communicate with individuals about promoting their health and wellbeing while working as a Health Trainer	3	3	15
Y/601/1695	Understand How to Safeguard the Wellbeing of Children and Young People	3	3	25
D/601/1696	Support Children and Young People's Health and Safety	3	2	15
H/601/1697	Develop Positive Relationship with Children, Young People and Others Involved in Their Care	3	1	8
K/601/1698	Working Together for the Benefit of Children and Young People	3	2	15
M/601/1699	Understand How to Support Positive Outcomes for Children and Young People	3	3	25
M/600/9760	Assessment and planning with children and young people	3	5	35
F/600/9780	Promote the wellbeing and resilience of children and young people	3	4	30
F/601/0315	Professional practice in children and young people's social care	3	4	30
T/601/7908	Support individuals to prepare for and settle in to new home environments	3	3	23
F/601/3764	Promote positive behaviour	3	6	44
F/601/4056	Support use of medication in social care settings	3	5	40
A/601/1334	Provide information and advice to children and young people	3	3	22
F/601/1349	Support young people to move towards independence and manage their lives	3	3	20
A/600/9809	Work with children and young people in a residential care setting	3	5	35
L/601/2861	Support positive practice with children and young people with speech, language and communication needs	3	4	28
K/601/0132	Support children or young people in their own home	3	4	30

M/503/5877	Support positive attachments for children and young people	3	7	55
M/504/2196	Support individuals with autistic spectrum conditions	3	4	33
H/503/8842	Prepare, load and operate decontamination equipment	3	3	23
K/503/8843	Prepare re-useable medical devices for sterilisation	3	3	24
M/503/8844	Carry out sterilisation and product release of re-useable medical devices	3	2	19
T/503/8845	Understand how to monitor the decontamination process	3	1	8
J/601/1515	Monitor and solve customer service problems	3	6	40
Y/600/9669	Plan, allocate and monitor work of a team	3	5	25
J/503/7165	Understand Stroke Care Management	3	4	36
F/602/4005	Conduct hearing assessments	3	5	38
H/602/4000	Conduct External Ear Examinations	3	4	28
L/602/1009	Carry out intravenous infusion	3	4	30
R/602/0959	Carry out blood collection from fixed or central lines	3	4	30
D/503/1839	Diabetes Awareness	3	6	46
L/502/1212	Introduction to the role and responsibilities of a Health Trainer	3	4	20
R/502/1213	Establishing and developing relationships with communities while working as a Health Trainer	3	3	10
L/502/1226	Enable individuals to change their behaviour to improve their health and wellbeing while working as a Health Trainer	3	5	25
J/504/1023	Clinical Imaging Support Worker: Anatomy and Terminology	3	3	24
D/504/1027	Clinical Imaging Support Worker: Fundamentals of Care	3	6	48
F/504/1022	Clinical Imaging Support Worker: Radiation Protection and Awareness	3	3	24
T/504/0997	The Use of Contrast Media in Clinical Imaging	3	2	15
Y/506/1406	Speech and Language Support for 11-16s: From Theory into Practice	3	9	63
D/506/1407	Speech and Language Support for 5-11s: From Theory into Practice	3	9	63
K/506/1409	Communication Support for 0-25s with Severe and Complex Needs: From Theory into Practice	3	9	63
J/501/5988	Communication and relationships to promote the wellbeing and mental health of older people	3	3	14

## Centre Requirements

Centres must be approved to offer this qualification. If your centre is not approved please complete and submit form **ProQual Additional Qualification Approval Application**.

### Staff

Staff delivering this qualification must be appropriately qualified and occupationally competent.

### Assessors/Internal Quality Assurance

For each competence-based unit centres must be able to provide at least one assessor and one internal quality assurance verifier who are suitably qualified for the specific occupational area. Assessors and internal quality assurance verifiers for competence-based units or qualifications will normally need to hold appropriate assessor or verifier qualifications, such as:

- Award in Assessing Competence in the Work Environment
- Award in Assessing Vocationally Related Achievement
- Certificate in Assessing Vocational Achievement
- Award in the Internal Quality Assurance of Assessment Processes and Practices
- Certificate in Leading the Internal Quality Assurance of Assessment Processes and Practices

## Support for Candidates

Materials produced by centres to support candidates should:

- enable them to track their achievements as they progress through the learning outcomes and assessment criteria;
- provide information on where ProQual's policies and procedures can be viewed;
- provide a means of enabling Internal and External Quality Assurance staff to authenticate evidence

## Assessment

Candidates must demonstrate the level of knowledge described in the units. Assessment is the process of measuring a candidate's knowledge and understanding against the standards set in the qualification.

Each candidate is required to produce evidence which demonstrates their achievement of all of the learning outcomes and assessment criteria for each unit.

Evidence can include:

- assignments/projects/reports
- worksheets
- portfolio of evidence
- record of oral and/or written questioning
- candidate test papers

**Learning outcomes** set out what a candidate is expected to know, understand or be able to do.

**Assessment criteria** specify the standard a candidate must meet to show the learning outcome has been achieved.

*Learning outcomes and assessment criteria can be found from page 15.*

## Internal Quality Assurance

An internal quality assurance verifier confirms that assessment decisions made in centres are made by competent and qualified assessors, that they are the result of sound and fair assessment practice and that they are recorded accurately and appropriately.

## Adjustments to Assessment

Adjustments to standard assessment arrangements are made on the individual needs of candidates. ProQual's Reasonable Adjustments Policy and Special Consideration Policy sets out the steps to follow when implementing reasonable adjustments and special considerations and the service that ProQual provides for some of these arrangements.

Centres should contact ProQual for further information or queries about the contents of the policy.

## Results Enquiries and Appeals

All enquiries relating to assessment or other decisions should be dealt with by centres, with reference to ProQual's Enquiries and Appeals Procedures.

## Certification

Candidates who achieve the required credits for qualifications will be awarded:

- A certificate listing the unit achieved with its related credit value, and
- A certificate giving the full qualification title -

### **ProQual Level 3 Award in Healthcare and Social Care Support Skills**

#### **Claiming certificates**

Centres may claim certificates for candidates who have been registered with ProQual and who have successfully achieved the required number of credits for a qualification. All certificates will be issued to the centre for successful candidates.

#### **Replacement certificates**

If a replacement certificate is required a request must be made to ProQual in writing. Replacement certificates are labelled as such and are only provided when the claim has been authenticated. Refer to the Fee Schedule for details of charges for replacement certificates.

# Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

## Unit A/601/0121

### Work with babies and young children to promote their development and learning

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand the development and learning of babies and young children	1.1 Explain the pattern of development in the first three years of life and the skills typically acquired at each stage
	1.2 Explain: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• how development and learning are interconnected</li><li>• how and why variations occur in rate and sequence of development and learning</li><li>• that learning may take place in different ways.</li><li>• the importance of play</li></ul>
	1.3 Explain the potential effects on development, of pre conceptual, pre-birth and birth experiences
	1.4 Explain the impact of current research into the development and learning of babies and young children
2 Be able to promote the development and learning of babies and young children	2.1 Undertake assessments of babies or young children's development and learning needs
	2.2 Demonstrate in own practice how the indoor and outdoor environment is responsive to the development and learning needs of babies and young children
	2.3 Plan play based activities and experiences based on assessments to support development and learning
	2.4 Demonstrate in own practice the provision of play based activities and experiences to promote development and learning that are tailored to babies or young children's needs
3 Understand the attachment needs of babies and young children	3.1 Explain the benefits of the key worker/person system in early year's settings

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
	<p>3.2 Explain how babies and young children learn and develop best from a basis of loving, secure relationships with carers and with key persons in work settings.</p> <p>3.3 Analyse the possible effects of poor quality attachments on the development of babies and children</p>
<p>4 Be able to engage with babies and young children and be sensitive to their needs</p>	<p>4.1 Engage sensitively with babies and young children giving them time to respond</p> <p>4.2 Engage in playful activity with babies and young children</p> <p>4.3 Explain how babies express their emotions, preferences and needs and demonstrate responsive care in own practice.</p> <p>4.4 Explain why it is important to manage transitions for babies and young children</p> <p>4.5 Explain when and why babies and young children require periods of quiet to rest and sleep</p>
<p>5 Be able to work in partnership with carers in order to promote the learning and development of babies and young children</p>	<p>5.1 Explain the primary importance of carers in the lives of babies and young children</p> <p>5.2 Demonstrate in own practice how to exchange information with carers</p> <p>5.3 Evaluate ways of working in partnership with carers</p>

## Unit A/601/1429

### Engage in personal development in health, social care or children's and young people's settings

Learning Outcome - The learner will:		Assessment Criterion - The learner can:	
1	Understand what is required for competence in own work role	1.1	Describe the duties and responsibilities of own work role
		1.2	Explain expectations about own work role as expressed in relevant standards
2	Be able to reflect on practice	2.1	Explain the importance of reflective practice in continuously improving the quality of service provided
		2.2	Demonstrate the ability to reflect on practice
		2.3	Describe how own values, belief systems and experiences may affect working practice
3	Be able to evaluate own performance	3.1	Evaluate own knowledge, performance and understanding against relevant standards
		3.2	Demonstrate use of feedback to evaluate own performance and inform development
4	Be able to agree a personal development plan	4.1	Identify sources of support for planning and reviewing own development
		4.2	Demonstrate how to work with others to review and prioritise own learning needs, professional interests and development opportunities
		4.3	Demonstrate how to work with others to agree own personal development plan
5	Be able to use learning opportunities and reflective practice to contribute to personal development	5.1	Evaluate how learning activities have affected practice
		5.2	Demonstrate how reflective practice has led to improved ways of working
		5.3	Show how to record progress in relation to personal development

## Unit A/601/5190

### Support individuals with multiple conditions and/or disabilities

Learning Outcome - The learner will:		Assessment Criterion - The learner can:	
1	Understand the impact of multiple conditions and/or disabilities on individuals	1.1	Describe possible multiple conditions and/or disabilities that individuals may have
		1.2	Explain how multiple conditions and/or disabilities may have an additional impact on the individual's wellbeing and quality of life
		1.3	Explain how multiple conditions and/or disabilities may impact on individual's opportunity to participate in a range of activities
2	Understand own role in supporting individuals with multiple conditions and/or disabilities	2.1	Describe own role in supporting the wellbeing of individuals with multiple conditions and/or disabilities
		2.2	Explain the steps to take when actions may be outside of the scope of own role and responsibilities
3	Understand the support available for individuals with multiple conditions and/or disabilities	3.1	Research the roles of professionals who may provide support to individuals with multiple conditions and/or disabilities in own local area
		3.2	Explain the range of equipment that is available to support the additional needs of individuals with multiple conditions and/or disabilities
		3.3	Explain the range of resources that is available to support the additional needs of individuals with multiple conditions and/or disabilities
		3.4	Explain the importance of informal networks in providing support to individuals with multiple conditions and/or disabilities
4		4.1	Support an individual to identify needs and preferences

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

	4.2	Identify any resources or specialist equipment that may be required to support an individual to engage in activities
Be able to assist individuals with multiple conditions and/or disabilities	4.3	Support an individual to engage in activities that meet their needs and preferences
5	5.1	Review with the individual and/or others, how well the activities have met the identified needs and preferences
Be able to evaluate the support provided to an individual to engage in activities	5.2	Reflect on own support to an individual to engage in activities
	5.3	Explain where additional advice, guidance or support can be accessed to improve own practice
	5.4	Adapt own practice to support the needs of the individual

## Unit A/601/7909

### Support individuals who are bereaved

Learning Outcome - The learner will:		Assessment Criterion - The learner can:	
1	Understand the effects of bereavement on individuals	1.1	Describe how an individual may feel immediately following the death of a loved one
		1.2	Analyse how the bereavement journey may be different for different individuals
2	Understand principles for supporting individuals who are bereaved	2.1	Compare the key points of theories of bereavement that assist in supporting individuals who are bereaved
		2.2	Explain the importance of acting in accordance with an individual's culture and beliefs when providing support for bereavement
		2.3	Explain the importance of empathy in supporting a bereaved individual
3	Be able to support individuals to express their response to loss	3.1	Create an environment where the individual has privacy to express their emotions
		3.2	Demonstrate active listening skills to support the individual to express their thoughts, feelings and distress
4	Be able to support individuals who are bereaved	4.1	Assess the individual's level of distress and their capacity for resilience
		4.2	Agree a programme of support with the individual and others
		4.3	Carry out own role within the support programme
		4.4	Support the individual to identify any changes they may need to make as a result of their loss
		4.5	Explain the importance of working at the individual's pace during the bereavement journey

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
	4.6 Support the individual to manage conflicting emotions, indecision or fear of the future
5 Understand the role of specialist agencies in supporting individuals who are bereaved	5.1 Compare the roles of specialist agencies in supporting individuals who are bereaved
	5.2 Describe how to assess whether a bereaved individual requires specialist support
	5.3 Explain the importance of establishing agreement with the individual about making a referral to a specialist agency
6 Be able to manage own feelings when providing support for individuals who are bereaved	6.1 Identify ways to manage own feelings while providing support for an individual who is bereaved
	6.2 Use support systems to help manage own feelings

## Unit A/601/8980

### Prepare for and carry out extended feeding techniques

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand anatomy and physiology in relation to extended feeding	1.1 Explain the anatomy and physiology of the gastro-intestinal tract in relation to extended feeding
	1.2 Explain the importance of fluid and nutritional balance to the health of individuals
	1.3 Describe conditions where feeding may be undertaken by extended methods
2 Understand extended feeding techniques	2.1 Explain techniques for extended feeding
	2.2 Describe equipment and materials that may be used for extended feeding
	2.3 Describe ways to support an individual to prepare for extended feeding in a way that meets their individual needs and preferences
	2.4 Describe how to recognise and deal with adverse reactions which may occur <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• during procedures</li><li>• following procedures</li></ul>
3 Understand legislation and agreed ways of working when using extended feeding techniques	3.1 Explain legislation, protocols and agreed ways of working that affect working practices related to extended feeding
	3.2 Explain the importance of following procedures exactly as specified
4 Be able to manage risks relating to extended feeding	4.1 Identify potential risks associated with extended feeding
	4.2 Describe the potential sources and consequences of contamination
	4.3 Explain why it is important to <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• maintain the correct level of cleanliness</li><li>• pack up used equipment and materials and cover receptacles containing body fluids prior to leaving the immediate area</li></ul>

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

	4.4	Apply standard precautions for infection prevention and control and other measures to minimise risks before, during and after the procedure	
	4.5	Dispose of <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Used equipment, materials and feeds</li><li>• Body fluids including those aspirated prior to feeding</li></ul> in accordance with legislation and agreed ways of working	
5	Be able to prepare for extended feeding	5.1	Ensure that adequate and relevant fluids, feeds and equipment are available
		5.2	Confirm the identity of the individual prior to carrying out the activity
		5.3	Obtain valid consent from the individual prior to carrying out the planned activity
		5.4	Confirm equipment and materials are <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• appropriate to the procedure</li><li>• fit for purpose</li></ul>
		5.5	Position the individual to ensure safety and comfort and facilitate the method of extended feeding
6	Be able to carry out and complete extended feeding techniques	6.1	Attach and position feeding tubes correctly and securely in a manner that prevents discomfort and promotes the dignity of an individual
		6.2	Carry out extended feeding safely and according to the individual's plan of care
		6.3	Observe the individual throughout the activity and respond to any adverse reactions
		6.4	Ensure the comfort of the individual following extended feeding
7		7.1	Complete required records

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

Be able to maintain records and report on extended feeding

- 7.2 Identify others who may be involved in reviewing the nutritional and fluid intake of an individual
- 7.3 Report any findings about the process and the individual which may have an impact on the care plan

## Unit A/601/9028

### Provide support to continue recommended therapies

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand the importance of supporting individuals to continue recommended therapies	1.1 Analyse the potential benefits of recommended therapies to an individual's health and wellbeing
	1.2 Describe barriers that may prevent individuals from continuing recommended therapies, and the possible consequences of discontinuation
2 Be able to encourage individuals to complete activities recommended by therapists	2.1 Establish agreement on an individual's needs and preferences about continuing a recommended therapy
	2.2 Provide opportunities for an individual to access information about the benefits of continuing the recommended therapy
	2.3 Describe how to overcome an individual's fears or concerns about continuing the recommended therapy
3 Be able to support individuals to continue recommended therapy	3.1 Clarify with the therapist the information needed before providing support for the therapy
	3.2 Promote active participation during therapy
	3.3 Address difficulties encountered during therapy
	3.4 Provide constructive feedback and encouragement to the individual during therapy
4 Be able to observe, record and report on observations during recommended therapy	4.1 Establish with the individual and others what observations need to be made during therapy sessions
	4.2 Carry out agreed observations
	4.3 Record agreed observations as required
	4.4 Report on the findings of observations to individuals and others

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- |   |   |     |   |
|---|---|-----|---|
| 5 | Be able to contribute to evaluation and review of recommended therapies | 5.1 | Work with others to establish processes and criteria for evaluating the effectiveness of the therapy and the support provided |
|   |   | 5.2 | Carry out agreed role to support the evaluation, using observations and feedback from the individual and others               |
|   |   | 5.3 | Agree changes to therapy sessions or the support provided   |

## Unit A/602/0972

### Insert and secure nasogastric tubes

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice which impact on own role	1.1 Summarise the current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice guidelines for inserting and securing nasogastric tubes
	1.2 Summarise own responsibilities and accountability in relation to current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice guidelines
	1.3 Explain the duty to report any acts or omissions in care that could be detrimental
	1.4 Explain the importance of working within own role and of seeking advice when faced with situations outside this role
2 Understand the purpose and functions of nasogastric tubes and associated procedures	2.1 Explain the anatomy of the upper gastrointestinal tract in relation to inserting nasogastric tubes
	2.2 Describe the physiology of the stomach and small intestine in relation to potential contents of gastric aspirate
	2.3 Explain the types of nasogastric tubes that can be used and why the most appropriate tube must be selected for the individual
	2.4 Explain the normal appearance and content of stomach/intestinal fluid and how it could be affected by the individual's presenting medical condition
	2.5 Describe the potential sources of contamination when inserting nasogastric tubes and how these can be reduced
	2.6 Explain how aseptic technique contributes to the control of infection
3 Be able to prepare the insertion of a nasogastric tube	3.1 Implement health and safety measures relevant to the procedure and environment

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
	<p>3.2 Apply standard precautions for infection control</p> <p>3.3 Confirm the individual's identity and gain valid consent</p> <p>3.4 Explain the planned procedure according to the individual's plan of care plan and in line with local policy/protocol</p> <p>3.5 Communicate information in a way that is sensitive to the personal beliefs and preferences of the individual</p> <p>3.6 Prepare the equipment required in accordance with local policy/protocol</p>
<p>4 Be able to insert a nasogastric tube</p>	<p>4.1 Maintain compliance with health and safety guidance at all times</p> <p>4.2 Ensure the individual is positioned in a way that will maintain their safety and comfort and will facilitate the insertion of the nasogastric tube</p> <p>4.3 Ensure that an individual's privacy and dignity is maintained at all times</p> <p>4.4 Insert the nasogastric in accordance with local policy and protocol</p> <p>4.5 Observe the individual throughout the procedure, reporting any adverse reactions in line with local policy</p> <p>4.6 Ensure the nasogastric tube is correctly positioned in the stomach</p> <p>4.7 Ensure the drainage bag is securely attached in a way that prevents discomfort and promotes dignity of the individual</p>
<p>5</p>	<p>5.1 Observe, report and document any changes in appearance to nasogastric aspirate</p>

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

Be able to provide aftercare for individuals following nasogastric tube insertion	5.2	Measure and record the volume of aspirate in line with local policy
	5.3	Seek assistance promptly from an appropriate person should it be required at any stage
	5.4	Ensure the comfort of the individual following insertion of the nasogastric tube
	5.5	Dispose of waste according to local procedures

## Unit A/602/3516

### Develop positive relationships with children and young people

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice guidelines related to supporting parents/carers to care for babies during their first year	<p>1.1 Summarise current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice guidelines related to supporting parents/carers to care for babies during their first year</p> <p>1.2 Describe local policies for child safety and protection</p> <p>1.3 Explain how to work in partnership with parents/carers and significant others in order to support them to care for babies during their first year</p> <p>1.4 Explain the rights and responsibilities of parents/carers for their child and own role in relation to this</p> <p>1.5 Explain how to obtain advice and information to support own practice</p> <p>1.6 Explain how to report any concerns about the parent/carer or child's health, safety or wellbeing in line with local policy and protocol</p> <p>1.7 Explain how to access records and information on the needs and preferences of babies, parents and carers, in line with local policy and protocol</p> <p>1.8 Explain the importance of confidentiality when accessing records and information</p>
2 Understand the need for developing positive relationships with children and young people	<p>2.1 Explain why developing positive relationships with children and young people is important</p> <p>2.2 Explain how to develop positive relationships with children and young people</p>

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
<p>3 Be able to establish positive relationships with children and young people</p>	<p>2.3 Explain how to maintain positive relationships with children and young people</p> <p>3.1 Explain how to respect privacy and confidentiality wishes</p> <p>3.2 Check that the child or young person understands that their needs are important and are being addressed</p> <p>3.3 Establish, through play and other methods, a rapport with the child or young person that encourages a good relationship to develop</p> <p>3.4 Obtain support in line with local policy or protocol where there are communication or relationship issues</p>
<p>4 Be able to provide information and advice to children and young people</p>	<p>4.1 Respond to any concerns that the child or young person might have</p> <p>4.2 Agree with the child or young person the information which may be shared with others</p> <p>4.3 Provide information for the child or young person using different words, phrases, and expressions to assist understanding</p> <p>4.4 Direct the child or young person to any further sources of information, advice or support</p> <p>4.5 Maintain records in line with local policy and protocol</p> <p>4.6 Communicate in a way that is sensitive to the age, understanding and preferences of the child or young person</p>

## Unit A/602/4018

### Provide advice and information to enable parents to promote the health and well-being of their newborn babies

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice guidelines related to providing advice and information to parents/carers on the health and wellbeing of newborn babies	1.1 Summarise current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice guidelines related to providing advice and information to parents/carers on the health and wellbeing of newborn babies  1.2 Describe local policies for child safety and protection  1.3 Explain how to work in partnership with parents/carers and significant others  1.4 Explain the rights and responsibilities of parents/carers for their child and own role in relation to this  1.5 Explain how to obtain advice and information to support own practice  1.6 Explain how to report any concerns about the parent/carer or child's health, safety or wellbeing in line with local policy and protocol  1.7 Explain how to access records and information on the needs and preferences of babies, parents and carers, in line with local policy and protocol  1.8 Explain the importance of confidentiality when accessing records and information
2 Understand the requirements for the health and well-being of newborn babies and their parents/carers	2.1 Explain the differing needs of babies at the different stages of physical, social, emotional and cognitive development  2.2 Describe the main trends and changes relating to the care of newborn babies

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- |   |   |  |
|---|---|--|
| 3 | Be able to provide advice and information that enables parents/carers to meet the health and well-being needs of their newborn babies | 2.3 Explain how adopting a healthy lifestyle can enable parents/carers to promote their own health and well-being and that of their babies                                     |
|   |   | 2.4 Explain the benefits of empowering parents/carers to manage the care of their babies, including the involvement of the father/father figure                                |
|   |   | 2.5 Summarise the principles and practice of infant feeding during the first year  |
|   |   | 2.6 Identify how the needs of newborn babies may affect those who care for them  |
|   |   | 2.7 Explain the impact of family and environment, including parenting capacity, on the health and well-being of babies   |
|   |   | 2.8 Identify the contributing factors that increase the risk of significant harm to newborn babies and how to respond to any concerns  |
|   |   | 3.1 Explain the purpose of own role and organisation to parents/carers   |
|   |   | 3.2 Discuss with parents/carers their understanding of how to promote and protect the health and well-being of their baby  |
|   |   | 3.3 Involve parents/carers in identifying their requirements for promoting and protecting the health and well-being of their baby, including the advice and information needed |
|   |   | 3.4 Provide information in a way that enables parents/carers to make informed choices about the care of their baby   |

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- 3.5 Discuss with parents/carers potential lifestyle changes that will increase their capacity to manage their parenting responsibilities and optimise their own health and well-being, encouraging them to set achievable targets
- 3.6 Assist parents/carers in developing realistic and achievable plans for promoting and protecting the health and well-being of their baby
- 3.7 Provide information on how to access services, information and other resources available locally or nationally for parents/carers
- 3.8 Update records in line with local policy and protocol
- 3.9 Agree dates to review progress and requirements

## Unit A/602/4410

### Facilitate and monitor housing and accommodation services to support individuals with mental health needs

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice guidelines related to working with housing and accommodation agencies supporting individuals with mental health needs	1.1 Summarise current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice guidelines for working with an individual with mental health needs
	1.2 Summarise current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice guidelines related to the provision of housing and accommodation for an individual with mental health needs
2 Understand the nature and operation of the housing sector as related to people with mental health needs	2.1 Explain the role of the principal agencies within the housing sector who develop housing and accommodation for individuals with mental health needs
	2.2 Explain the impact of homelessness on mental health needs
	2.3 Describe the different types of accommodation that are available with reference to an individual's mental health needs
	2.4 Compare different types of accommodation in terms of the support they offer to an individual with mental health needs
	2.5 Explain the influence of age and type of mental health needs on decisions made relating to housing
	2.6 Describe the practical and emotional skills required to live independently
3 Be able to facilitate the arrangement of housing and accommodation services for individuals with mental health needs	3.1 Support the individual in making preparations to attend housing and accommodation services
	3.2 Discuss with housing and accommodation services the individual's housing and accommodation needs

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
	<p>3.3 Explain the factors that need to be considered in arranging housing and accommodation to meet the individual's needs</p> <p>3.4 Confirm that steps have been taken to maintain an individual's privacy and dignity at all times</p> <p>3.5 Confirm that steps have been taken to treat individuals with equality and that they are not discriminated against due to mental health needs</p> <p>3.6 Provide information to the housing and accommodation services in line with local policy and protocol</p> <p>3.7 Explain own role in assisting housing and accommodation services</p> <p>3.8 Explain the procedures for raising concerns relating to an individual with mental health needs in line with local policy and protocol</p>
<p>4 Be able to monitor the provision of housing and accommodation services for individuals with mental health needs</p>	<p>4.1 Maintain contact with housing and accommodation workers to review arrangements in line with local policy and protocol</p> <p>4.2 Monitor an individual's progress in maintaining housing responsibilities</p> <p>4.3 Respond to any issues that interfere with the housing and accommodation arrangements</p> <p>4.4 Support partnership arrangements in maintaining housing and accommodation for an individual with mental health needs</p>
<p>5 Be able to keep records relating to individuals housing and accommodation</p>	<p>5.1 Update records on the individual's progress with their housing and accommodation in line with local policy and protocol</p> <p>5.2 Collate records in order to contribute to data collection on work carried out with housing and accommodation services</p>



## Unit A/602/4519

### Collaborate in the assessment of environmental and social support in the community

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice guidelines related to the provision of environmental and social support in the community	1.1 Summarise current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice guidelines which affect work with the provision of environmental and social support in the community  1.2 Identify when good practice suggests it may be necessary to seek assistance
2 Understand how to assess the need for, and provision of, environmental and social support in the community	2.1 Describe situations when individuals may need to be provided with environmental or social support  2.2 Describe the types, purpose and function of materials, equipment and support that may be required in relation to assessing environmental and social support in the community  2.3 Describe the purpose of the assessment tools used in the workplace  2.4 Explain the procedures relating to carrying out an assessment of environmental and social support in the community  2.5 Explain the roles of individuals involved assessing environmental and social support in the community
3 Be able to carry out assessments in collaboration with others to establish the need for, and provision, of environmental and social support in the community	3.1 Communicate with the individual and relevant others in a way that encourages personal choice  3.2 Undertake the assessment in line with local policy and protocol  3.3 Identify and prioritise the individual's needs, in conjunction with relevant others if necessary

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
	3.4 Record the outcomes of the assessment in line with local policy and protocol
	3.5 Pass on the outcomes of the assessment in line with local policy and protocol
4 Be able to plan changes to be made to the environment and social support with individuals and relevant others	4.1 Confirm the availability of the resources required
	4.2 Communicate the options for support and equipment to the individual and relevant others
	4.3 Identify any difficulties with providing the support or equipment, discussing possible solutions
	4.4 Agree any proposed changes to the environment and social support and gain valid consent to carry these out
	4.5 Record the agreed actions in line with local policy and protocol

## Unit D/501/3826 Influencing Others at Work

### Learning Outcome - The learner will:

### Assessment Criterion - The learner can:

- |   |                                    |     |  |
|---|------------------------------------|-----|--|
| 1 | Understand the value of networking | 1.1 | Explain the value to the first line manager of networking  |
|   |                                    | 1.2 | Identify an appropriate network for a first line manager and describe methods to establish and maintain effective professional relationships with the identified network |

## Unit D/601/0130

# Care for the physical and nutritional needs of babies and young children

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Be able to provide respectful physical care for babies and young children	<p>1.1 Demonstrate culturally and ethnically appropriate care for babies and young children for</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Skin</li><li>• Hair</li><li>• Teeth</li><li>• Nappy area</li></ul> <p>1.2 Demonstrate in own practice how to take into account the preferences of carers in the provision of physical care and explain why this is important</p> <p>1.3 Demonstrate in own practice how you engage with babies or young children in a respectful manner and provide personalised physical care tailored to their needs.</p> <p>1.4 Explain organisational or regulatory procedures that protect babies, young children and practitioners when providing personal care and why these are necessary.</p>
2 Be able to provide routines for babies and young children that support their health and development	<p>2.1 Plan daily and weekly routines for babies and young children suitably personalised to meet individual needs</p> <p>2.2 Demonstrate in own practice how to treat babies or young children with respect and sensitivity during everyday care routines</p> <p>2.3 Explain the principles of effective toilet training and how this is incorporated into routines</p>
3 Be able to provide opportunities for exercise and physical activity	<p>3.1 Explain the importance of exercise and physical activity for babies and young children</p> <p>3.2 Demonstrate in own practice how to support babies or young children's exercise and physical activity</p>

<b>Learning Outcome - The learner will:</b>	<b>Assessment Criterion - The learner can:</b>
<p>4 Be able to provide safe and protective environments for babies and young children</p>	<p>4.1 Explain policies and procedures in own setting that cover health, safety and protection of babies and young children</p> <p>4.2 Demonstrate and evaluate the safety features within the environment for babies and young children</p> <p>4.3 Supervise babies or young children and demonstrate a balanced approach to risk management</p> <p>4.4 Explain current advice on minimising sudden infant death syndrome in everyday routines for babies</p>
<p>5 Be able to provide for the nutritional needs of babies under 18 months</p>	<p>5.1 Identify, using current government guidance, the nutritional needs of babies until they are fully weaned and using information from carers plan a programme of weaning</p> <p>5.2 Prepare formula feeds hygienically following current guidance</p> <p>5.3 Evaluate the benefits of different types of formula that are commonly available</p>
<p>6 Understand how to provide for the nutritional needs of young children from 18-36 months</p>	<p>6.1 Plan meals for young children that meet their nutritional needs based on current government guidance and information from carers</p> <p>6.2 Explain food allergies and intolerances that a young child may experience and the importance of following carers instructions on the needs of their child</p>

## Unit D/601/5750

### Support families who have a child with a disability

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand the impact on a family of having a child with a disability	1.1 Describe the emotional impact that a diagnosis can have on families 1.2 Explain how the impact of having a child with a disability can be rewarding and/or challenging 1.3 Explain the emotional experience that families may have after diagnosis, using theories of loss 1.4 Explain how having a child with a disability may affect interpersonal relationships within a family 1.5 Identify the changes that may need to be made to family life, social life, work and accommodation 1.6 Explain why it is important for family members to have opportunities to explore feelings and experiences
2 Be able to support families who have a child with a disability	2.1 Establish with the family the support they require 2.2 Work with the family to identify different ways that needs can be met 2.3 Support family members to discuss feelings and experiences related to having a child with a disability
3 Be able to support families with a child with a disability to use informal networks and community resources	3.1 Explain what informal networks and community resources there are for children with disabilities and their families 3.2 Give information to a family about community resources and informal networks to enable them to make choices 3.3 Support a family to use community resources and informal networks

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
<p>4 4. Be able to work in partnership with other professionals and agencies to support families with a child with a disability</p>	<p>4.1 Identify support and resources that a child with a disability may need</p> <p>4.2 Investigate the roles of other professionals and agencies that may provide support to families with a child with a disability</p> <p>4.3 Provide information to a family about professionals and agencies that may provide support</p> <p>4.4 Identify when referrals should be made to other professionals and/or agencies</p> <p>4.5 Demonstrate partnership working with other professionals and agencies to provide support to families with a child with a disability</p> <p>4.6 Review the outcomes for the family of partnership working</p> <p>4.7 Identify and report any additional support required by the family</p>

## Unit D/601/7904

### Support individuals to manage their finances

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Know how to access information and advice about financial affairs	1.1 Identify sources of information and advice about methods and services for managing personal finances 1.2 Identify sources of information and advice about benefits and allowances 1.3 Describe the role of others who may be involved in supporting individuals to manage their own finances 1.4 Describe how and when to access specialist expertise about managing financial affairs 1.5 Explain how to access advice on safeguarding against financial abuse
2 Be able to provide support for individuals to manage their finances	2.1 Identify legislation, codes of practice and agreed ways of working that apply when providing support to manage financial affairs 2.2 Work with the individual to identify the skills they have for managing their own finances 2.3 Identify an individual's preferred methods and services for managing their finances 2.4 Provide support for managing finances in a way that promotes active participation and safeguards the individual 2.5 Contribute to records and reports about finances in line with agreed ways of working
3 Be able to contribute to applying for financial assistance	3.1 Provide support for an individual to check the benefits and allowances to which they are entitled 3.2 Contribute to completing forms and paperwork to apply for benefits or entitlements in a way that promotes active participation

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:**

**Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- |   |  |     |   |
|---|--|-----|---|
| 4 | Be able to contribute to reviewing support for managing finances | 4.1 | Agree with the individual the process and criteria for measuring the effectiveness of methods, services and support for managing finances |
|   |  | 4.2 | Work with the individual to evaluate methods, services and support for managing finances  |
|   |  | 4.3 | Agree with the individual any changes to methods, services and support for managing finances  |
|   |  | 4.4 | Provide feedback to an organisation or agency about the effectiveness of financial information or support                                 |
|   |  | 4.5 | Explain the importance of providing feedback to organisations or agencies about any shortfalls in their financial services or support     |

## Unit D/601/8860

### Obtain venous blood samples

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand legislation, policy and good practice related to obtaining venous blood samples.	1.1 Describe current legislation, national guidelines, local policies, protocols and good practice guidelines which relate to obtaining venous blood samples.
2 Understand the anatomy and physiology relating to obtaining venous blood samples.	2.1 Describe the structure of venous blood vessels. 2.2 Explain blood clotting processes and the factors that influence blood clotting. 2.3 Describe the position of venous blood vessels in relation to arteries, nerves and other structures.
3 Be able to prepare to obtain venous blood samples.	3.1 Confirm the individual's identity and obtain valid consent. 3.2 Communicate with the individual in a manner which: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• provides relevant information</li> <li>• provides support and reassurance</li> <li>• addresses needs and concerns</li> <li>• is respectful of personal beliefs and preferences.</li> </ul> 3.3 Select and prepare appropriate equipment for obtaining the venous blood sample. 3.4 Select and prepare an appropriate site taking into account the individual's preferences.
4 Be able to obtain venous blood samples.	4.1 Apply health and safety measures relevant to the procedure and environment. 4.2 Apply standard precautions for infection prevention and control. 4.3 Use the selected blood collection equipment correctly, in a manner which will cause minimum discomfort to the individual.

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- |     |   |
|-----|---|
| 4.4 | Use the agreed procedure to obtain the venous blood sample, to include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• utilisation of containers</li><li>• required volume of blood</li><li>• correct sequence when obtaining multiple samples</li><li>• application and use of tourniquets at appropriate stages</li><li>• stimulation of blood flow or selection of alternative site where necessary</li><li>• utilisation of anti-coagulant with sample when necessary.</li></ul> |
| 4.5 | Respond to any indication of adverse reaction, complication or problem during the procedure.  |
| 4.6 | Explain the correct procedure to deal with an arterial puncture when it occurs.   |
| 4.7 | Terminate the blood collection procedure following guidelines and/or protocols to include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• removal of blood collection equipment</li><li>• stopping blood flow</li><li>• stopping bleeding</li><li>• application of suitable dressing</li><li>• personal care advice to the individual.</li></ul>   |
| 5   | Be able to prepare venous blood samples for transportation.   |
| 5.1 | Label, package, transport and store blood samples correctly and use appropriate attached documentation ensuring: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• legibility of labelling and documentation</li><li>• temperature control of storage</li><li>• immediacy of transportation.</li></ul>  |

## Unit D/601/9491

### Implement therapeutic group activities

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand the principles of therapeutic group activities	1.1 Explain how participating in therapeutic group activities can benefit an individual's identity, self-esteem and well-being  1.2 Analyse reasons why a group activity rather than one to one work may be recommended in particular circumstances  1.3 Compare key points of theories about group dynamics
2 Be able to plan and prepare for therapeutic group activities	2.1 Work with individuals and others to agree: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• the nature and purpose of a therapeutic group</li> <li>• specific activities to fit the purpose of the group</li> </ul> 2.2 Address any risks that may be associated with the planned activities  2.3 Prepare the environment for a therapeutic group activity  2.4 Prepare equipment or resources needed for the activity
3 Be able to support individuals during therapeutic group activities	3.1 Support group members to understand the purpose and proposed activity of the group  3.2 Support group members during the activity in ways that encourage effective communication, active participation and co-operation  3.3 Give direction, praise, reassurance and constructive feedback during the activity  3.4 Support the group to bring the activity to a safe and timely end
4	4.1 Encourage and support individuals to give feedback during and after group activities

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:**

**Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

Be able to contribute to the evaluation of therapeutic group activities

- 4.2 Agree processes and criteria for evaluating the therapeutic benefits of the group and its activities
- 4.3 Carry out own responsibilities for supporting the evaluation and agreeing any revisions
- 4.4 Record and report on outcomes and any revisions in line with agreed ways of working

## Unit D/602/1032

### Collate and communicate health information to individuals

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice in collating and communicating health information to individuals	1.1 Summarise the current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice guidelines for accessing, updating and maintaining individuals' health records and confidentiality in accordance with information governance  1.2 Explain own roles, responsibilities and accountability in relation to current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice concerning the collection and provision of information  1.3 Explain the ethics concerning confidentiality, and the tensions which may exist between an individual's request for information and the organisation's responsibilities within information governance
2 Be able to identify the information to be collated and communicated	2.1 Respond to individual needs in accordance with clinical governance and local policies and protocols  2.2 Confirm the purpose of the communication and needs of the recipients  2.3 Adhere to legislation, protocols and guidelines relating to giving/sharing information, confidentiality and record keeping in relation to information governance  2.4 Use relevant secure sources to access the required health information
3 Be able to communicate health information	3.1 Communicate with the individual and relevant carers or family at a pace and level appropriate to their understanding

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- 3.2 Identify and overcome any barriers to communication
- 3.3 Present health information in a format that is consistent with the individual's level of understanding, culture, background and preferred ways of communicating
- 3.4 Actively listen to the recipients' reactions to information provided and clarify any issues raised
- 3.5 Confirm that the information needs of the recipient have been met
- 3.6 Record the outcome of the communication by updating records in line with policies and protocols

## Unit D/602/3122

### Provide information and advice to individuals on eating to maintain optimum nutritional status

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Know factors which can affect the nutritional status of individuals	1.1 Identify factors which can affect an individual's nutritional intake
	1.2 Describe the relationship between exercise and weight management
	1.3 Describe the link between different foods and nutritional composition
	1.4 Outline basic anatomy and physiology in relation to maintaining optimum nutritional status
2 Know how to advise individuals on maintaining optimal nutritional status	2.1 Identify local and national services for an individual who needs information and support about changing their health behaviour
	2.2 Identify contact details of registered dietitians
	2.3 Identify when to seek advice from a qualified practitioner
	2.4 Outline the components of an ideal nutritional plan for the specific needs of an individual
	2.5 Outline the importance of gaining specific body measurements from an individual in order to inform the type of support needed to obtain optimum nutritional status
3 Be able to obtain specific body measurements from individuals	3.1 Prepare an environment which is suitable for confidential discussions and for taking body measurements
	3.2 Gain valid consent from the individual prior to taking body measurements
	3.3 Obtain background information from the individual

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
	3.4 Take an individual's body measurements in line with local policy and protocol
	3.5 Interpret results against standard measures
4 Be able to provide individuals with information and advice on eating to maintain optimum nutritional status	4.1 Explain the nutritional composition of different foods to the individual/carer
	4.2 Support an individual to assess their eating habits and set nutritional objectives
	4.3 Provide information to the individual/carer on how to maintain optimum nutritional status
	4.4 Update records in line with local policy and protocol
	4.5 Record any actions to be taken by the individual/carer

## Unit D/602/3198

### Assist in the implementation of programmes to increase mobility, movement and functional independence

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice related to the implementation of programmes to restore mobility, movement and functional independence	1.1 1 Summarise the current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice guidelines which inform own role and accountability when assisting in programmes to restore mobility, movement and functional independence
2 Understand health topics related to restoring movement and functional independence	2.1 1 Describe the physical and psychological benefits of functional exercise 2 Identify and describe the functions of the main muscle groups and joints in the body 3 Describe a range of psychological effects of physical disability on individuals 4 Describe the conditions which can cause difficulties in movements and mobility, in relation to those encountered in own role
3 Understand treatment programmes related to restoring movement and functional independence	3.1 1 Describe the treatment programmes for individuals with restricted movements and mobility encountered in own role 2 Explain the functions of equipment and materials used in own role and the hazards associated with them 3 Describe potential signs of adverse reactions to mobility and movement programmes
4 Be able to assist in implementing programmes to restore mobility, movement and functional independence	4.1 1 Obtain valid consent from the individual 2 Position the individual 3 Carry out therapeutic activities which fulfil the individual's needs and goals as outlined in the treatment plan 4 Support and encourage the individual to practise existing and newly developed skills during the treatment programme 5 Encourage the individual to practise skills developed during treatment in their daily life

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

5 Be able to make records and provide information to the practitioner

5.1

6 Monitor the individual during and after treatment in line with the treatment plan  
7 Describe monitoring processes used and their importance in treatment programmes

1 Feedback information to the practitioner to inform future treatment in line with local policy and protocol  
2 Make records of treatment activities and the individual's condition in line with national/local policy and protocol  
3 Explain the importance of seeking advice and guidance when the treatment activity is beyond own competence  
4 Explain the importance of reporting adverse reactions and the potential consequences of poor practice

## Unit D/602/3959

### Receive and handle clinical specimens within the sterile field

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand how to receive and handle clinical specimens within the sterile field in line with health and safety guidance	1.1 Identify the different types of specimens received and handled within the perioperative environment
	1.2 Identify the requirements for handling and transporting both frozen and non-frozen clinical specimens to ensure their condition is maintained
	1.3 Identify different types and uses of container and transport media in the perioperative environment
	1.4 Explain the potential consequences of poor practice related to handling, labelling and transporting clinical specimens
	1.5 Explain how to deal with hazards associated with receiving and handling clinical specimens
	1.6 Explain the pathogenic causes of wound infections
	1.7 Explain the consequences of the contamination of clinical specimens
2 Be able to receive and handle clinical specimens within the sterile field	2.1 . Apply standard precautions for infection control
	2.2 Implement health and safety measures relevant to handling clinical specimens
	2.3 Obtain valid consent to collect clinical specimens
	2.4 Obtain the correct container and transport medium for the type of clinical specimen being collected
	2.5 Receive the specimen in line with policies and protocols and place in the appropriate

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

container/transport medium for the type of clinical specimen

- 2.6 Pass specimens in a safe manner to the appropriate person while maintaining the sterile field
- 2.7 Confirm that specimens are labelled and documentation has been completed in line with local policies and protocols
- 2.8 Confirm dispatch of clinical specimens
- 2.9 Update records in line with local policies and protocols

## Unit D/602/3976

### Prepare anaesthetic environment and provide support for pre and post-operative anaesthesia and recovery

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand health and safety measures specific to carrying out activities in the anaesthetic/recovery environment	1.1 Explain the standard precautions required for preparing the anaesthetic/recovery environment and the potential consequences of poor practice  1.2 Explain the importance of wearing personal protective equipment in the anaesthetic/recovery environment  1.3 Explain the importance of using equipment in line with manufacturers' instructions and local policy and protocol  1.4 Explain how to recognise clinical emergencies, and how to provide support to the registered practitioner in these emergencies
2 Understand the parameters for clinical readings taken in the anaesthetic/recovery environment	2.1 Identify the normal parameters for temperature, pulse, blood pressure, respiration, oxygen levels and urinary output  2.2 Explain how to measure an individual's temperature, blood pressure, respiration, oxygen levels and urinary output  2.3 Explain how anaesthesia may affect an individual's temperature, pulse, blood pressure, respiration, oxygen levels and urinary output  2.4 Explain the common adverse reactions an individual may experience related to anaesthetic and recovery care  2.5 Explain the importance of reporting any issues beyond own competence in accordance with local policy and protocol
3	3.1 Implement health and safety measures relevant to anaesthetic/recovery equipment

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
<p>Be able to prepare and maintain anaesthetic/recovery equipment for the reception of individuals</p>	3.2 Apply standard precautions for infection control
	3.3 Make equipment and documentation available for the registered practitioner
	3.4 Document and report any equipment that is unfit for use according to local policy and protocol
	3.5 Clean reusable equipment in line with local policy and protocol
	3.6 Dispose of single use equipment and waste according to local policy and protocol
	3.7 Explain the importance of maintaining the stock of disposables/fluids/linen
<p>4 Be able to assist the registered practitioner in caring for individuals in the anaesthetic/recovery environment</p>	4.1 Confirm the individual's identity and gain valid consent
	4.2 Maintain the individual's privacy, dignity and comfort when the individual is transferred and received into the anaesthetic/recovery environment
	4.3 Work within own sphere of competence, recognising when to refer on issues
	4.4 Use verbal and non-verbal skills to support individuals, prior to and after anaesthesia/sedation, overcoming any possible communication difficulties
	4.5 Support the registered practitioner in the assessment, management and reassurance of the individual in the anaesthetic/recovery environment
	4.6 Explain the importance of monitoring the individual as delegated by the registered practitioner in accordance with the care plan

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- 4.7 Measure and record clinical observations, reporting any deviation from normal parameters to the registered practitioner
- 4.8 Record information in line with local policy and protocol

## Unit D/602/4013

### Make recommendations for the use of physical resources in a health setting

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand how to make recommendations for the use of physical resources in a health setting	1.1 Explain own role and responsibilities in relation to making recommendations for the use of physical resources  1.2 Explain the types of information required in order to make recommendations for the use of physical resources  1.3 Explain local plans and objectives in relation to programmes of work  1.4 Identify possible trends and developments which might influence future expenditure  1.5 Explain the principles and methods which underpin budgetary control
2 Be able to gather and interpret information to inform expenditure proposals, in line with organisational plans and objectives	2.1 Gather information to inform proposals for expenditure  2.2 Identify the level of physical resources required to maintain an effective service  2.3 Demonstrate the use of cost-benefit analysis  2.4 Collate suggestions for future expenditure from key stakeholders  2.5 Interpret any data gathered to inform expenditure proposal  2.6 Set targets and standards for the use of resources

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
<p>3 Be able to present proposals for expenditure for physical resources to stakeholders</p>	<p>2.7 Outline proposed methods of monitoring expenditure</p> <p>3.1 Prepare and present proposals for expenditure to stakeholders</p> <p>3.2 Summarise the expected benefits and any potential negative consequences of proposed expenditure</p> <p>3.3 Justify financial proposals, based on information gathered</p> <p>3.4 Provide an explanation to stakeholders why any other options for future expenditure have been rejected</p>
<p>4 Be able to negotiate proposals for expenditure for physical resources with stakeholders</p>	<p>4.1 Negotiate proposals for expenditure with stakeholders, clarifying any areas of uncertainty or disagreement if necessary</p> <p>4.2 Conclude negotiations with stakeholders within the agreed timescale</p> <p>4.3 Use verbal and non-verbal skills to maintain positive relations with stakeholders</p>

## Unit F/502/3412

### Maintaining quality standards in the health sector

Learning Outcome - The learner will:		Assessment Criterion - The learner can:	
1	Understand how to provide a quality service within legislation, policies and procedures	1.1	Explain the importance of meeting quality standards as determined by legislation, policies and procedures
		1.2	Explain how others could be encouraged to meet quality standards
		1.3	Explain the benefits of maintaining quality standards
2	Understand the importance of working with others to provide a quality service	2.1	Explain personal responsibilities for working with others
		2.2	Explain accountability when working with others
		2.3	Explain the importance of working effectively with others to provide a quality service
3	Know how to monitor quality standards	3.1	Describe methods of monitoring quality standards
		3.2	State how to inform other staff of quality issues
		3.3	Describe how resources can be monitored and maintained
		3.4	Outline the benefits of monitoring quality to maintain and improve standards
4	Understand the importance of prioritising own workload to reduce risks to quality	4.1	Review factors that can affect own workload
		4.2	Evaluate how prioritising work will ensure the maintenance and improvement of a quality service

## Unit F/601/3473

### Understand Models of Disability

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand the difference between models of disability	1.1 Outline the history and development of the medical, social and psycho-social models of disability  1.2 Compare and contrast the medical, social and psycho-social models of disability
2 Understand how the adoption of models of disability can shape an individual's identity and experience	2.1 Analyse how the medical, social and psycho-social models of disability can impact on an individual's identity and experience
3 Understand how the adoption of models of disability can shape service delivery	3.1 Analyse how the medical, social and psycho-social models of disability can shape service delivery  3.2 Evaluate how own practice promotes the wellbeing and quality of life of individuals

## Unit F/601/7927

### Support individuals to access and use services and facilities

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand factors that influence individuals' access to services and facilities	1.1 Describe how accessing a range of services and facilities can be beneficial to an individual's wellbeing 1.2 Identify barriers that individuals may encounter in accessing services and facilities 1.3 Describe ways of overcoming barriers to accessing services and facilities 1.4 Explain why it is important to support individuals to challenge information about services that may present a barrier to participation
2 Be able to support individuals to select services and facilities	2.1 Work with an individual to identify a range of services and facilities likely to meet their assessed needs 2.2 Agree with an individual their preferred options for accessing services and facilities 2.3 Work with an individual to select services or facilities that meet their assessed needs and preferences
3 Be able to support individuals to access and use services and facilities	3.1 Identify with an individual the resources, support and assistance required to access and use selected services and facilities 3.2 Carry out agreed responsibilities to enable the individual to access and use services and facilities 3.3 Explain how to ensure individuals' rights and preferences are promoted when accessing and using services and facilities
4 Be able to support individuals to review their access to and use of services and facilities	4.1 Work with an individual to evaluate whether services or facilities have met their assessed needs and preferences

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:**

**Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- 4.2 Support an individual to provide feedback on their experience of accessing and using services or facilities
- 4.3 Work with an individual to evaluate the support provided for accessing and using services or facilities
- 4.4 Identify and agree any changes needed to improve the experience and outcomes of accessing and using services or facilities

## Unit F/601/8138

### Promote and implement health and safety in health and social care

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand own responsibilities, and the responsibilities of others, relating to health and safety	1.1 Identify legislation relating to health and safety in a health or social care work setting
	1.2 Explain the main points of health and safety policies and procedures agreed with the employer
	1.3 Analyse the main health and safety responsibilities of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• self</li><li>• the employer or manager</li><li>• others in the work setting</li></ul>
	1.4 Identify specific tasks in the work setting that should not be carried out without special training
2 Be able to carry out own responsibilities for health and safety	2.1 Use policies and procedures or other agreed ways of working that relate to health and safety
	2.2 Support others to understand and follow safe practices
	2.3 Monitor and report potential health and safety risks
	2.4 Use risk assessment in relation to health and safety
	2.5 Demonstrate ways to minimise potential risks and hazards
	2.6 Access additional support or information relating to health and safety
3 Understand procedures for responding to accidents and sudden illness	3.1 Describe different types of accidents and sudden illness that may occur in own work setting

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
4 Be able to reduce the spread of infection	3.2 Explain procedures to be followed if an accident or sudden illness should occur  4.1 Explain own role in supporting others to follow practices that reduce the spread of infection  4.2 Demonstrate the recommended method for hand washing  4.3 Demonstrate ways to ensure that own health and hygiene do not pose a risk to an individual or to others at work
5 Be able to move and handle equipment and other objects safely	5.1 Explain the main points of legislation that relates to moving and handling  5.2 Explain principles for safe moving and handling  5.3 Move and handle equipment and other objects safely
6 Be able to handle hazardous substances and materials	6.1 Describe types of hazardous substances that may be found in the work setting  6.2 Demonstrate safe practices for: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Storing hazardous substances</li> <li>• Using hazardous substances</li> <li>• Disposing of hazardous substances and materials</li> </ul>
7 Be able to promote fire safety in the work setting	7.1 Describe practices that prevent fires from: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• starting</li> <li>• spreading</li> </ul> 7.2 Demonstrate measures that prevent fires from starting  7.3 Explain emergency procedures to be followed in the event of a fire in the work setting  7.4 Ensure that clear evacuation routes are maintained at all times

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
<p>8 Be able to implement security measures in the work setting</p>	<p>8.1 Demonstrate use of agreed procedures for checking the identity of anyone requesting access to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Premises</li> <li>• Information</li> </ul> <p>8.2 Demonstrate use of measures to protect own security and the security of others in the work setting</p> <p>8.3 Explain the importance of ensuring that others are aware of own whereabouts</p>
<p>9 Know how to manage stress</p>	<p>9.1 Describe common signs and indicators of stress</p> <p>9.2 Describe signs that indicate own stress</p> <p>9.3 Analyse factors that tend to trigger own stress</p> <p>9.4 Compare strategies for managing stress</p>

## Unit F/602/0049

# Support young people with a disability to make the transition into adulthood

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand the steps and stages of moving from childhood into adulthood	<p>1.1 Identify the range of physical, social and emotional changes which occur for young people as they move into adulthood</p> <p>1.2 Explain the changes faced by young people as they move from childhood into adulthood in relation to their freedoms, rights and responsibilities</p> <p>1.3 Explain how culture may impact on the process of moving from childhood into adulthood</p> <p>1.4 Explain theories about change and how this can affect a young person with a disability</p>
2 Understand how having a disability may affect the process of moving from childhood into adulthood	<p>2.1 Explain, giving examples, the potential effects of the transition process on young people with disabilities and their families</p> <p>2.2 Identify challenges young people with a disability might have in understanding and coping with change</p> <p>2.3 Outline the methods that can be used to support a young person with a disability to cope with changes</p> <p>2.4 Explain how legislation and local and national practice guidelines affect the planning of the transition for a young person with a disability from childhood into adulthood</p> <p>2.5 Describe the legislation that affects the right of a young person with a disability to make decisions about their life</p>
3 Know the options for supporting a young person who has a	3.1 Explain how a young person with a disability can have equal opportunities to make life choices as a young person without a disability

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:**

**Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

disability to make the transition into adulthood	3.2	Explain how to support a young person with a disability to explore the options available in relation to employment or continued education and development
	3.3	Explain how personal budgets can be used with young people in transition
4 Be able to support a young person with a disability through transition into adulthood	4.1	Explain the factors to consider, and types of support that a young person with a disability may need before, during, and after the transition process
	4.2	Support a young person to explore options for their future
	4.3	Use person-centred thinking to identify with the young person their needs and aspirations
	4.4	Use person-centred thinking to develop with the young person a plan to support them through transition
	4.5	Involve families in the transition process according to the wishes of the young person
	4.6	Identify ways to provide resources to meet needs
	4.7	Explain the role of key agencies and professionals likely to be involved in the transition process
	4.8	Outline possible areas of tension and conflict that may arise during the transition into adulthood
5 Be able to support a young person to reflect on the transition	5.1	Use person-centred approaches with the young person to review their transition plan and ensure it reflects their needs
	5.2	Support a young person to record the transition and what has happened in their life in order to plan for the future

## Unit F/602/0097

### Understand mental well-being and mental health promotion

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand the different views on the nature of mental well-being and mental health and the factors that may influence both across the life span	1.1 <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Evaluate two different views on the nature of mental well-being and mental health.</li><li>2. Explain the range of factors that may influence mental well-being and mental health problems across the life span, including:<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>a. biological factors</li><li>b. social factors</li><li>c. psychological factors.</li></ol></li><li>3. Explain how the following types of risk factors and protective factors influence levels of resilience in individuals and groups in relation to mental well-being and mental health.<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>a. risk factors including inequalities, poor quality social relationships</li><li>b. protective factors including socially valued roles, social support and contact</li></ol></li></ol>
2 Know how to implement an effective strategy for promoting mental well-being and mental health with individuals and groups	2.1 <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Explain the steps that an individual may take to promote their mental well-being and mental health.</li><li>2. Explain how to support an individual in promoting their mental well-being and mental health.</li><li>3. Evaluate a strategy for supporting an individual in promoting their mental well-being and mental health.</li><li>4. Describe key aspects of a local, national or international strategy to promote mental well-being and mental health within a group or community.</li><li>5. Evaluate a local, national or international strategy to promote mental well-being and mental health within a group or community.</li></ol>

## Unit F/602/3095

### Carry out vision screening

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand current legislation, policy and good practice related to carrying out vision screening	1.1 Describe the current legislation, national guidelines and local policies, protocols and guidance which affect own role  1.2 Identify the procedures related to carrying out vision screening  1.3 Summarise when good practice suggests it may be necessary to seek assistance
2 Understand the factors related to vision screening	2.1 Describe the structure and function of the eyes  2.2 Identify the types, purpose and function of materials and equipment required in relation to carrying out vision screening  2.3 Explain the methods and techniques for carrying out vision screening
3 Be able to prepare to carry out vision screening	3.1 Select equipment and check that it is fit for purpose  3.2 Identify any needs the individual has which may affect the accuracy of screening and describe the relevant actions to take to meet these needs
4 Be able to carry out vision screening	4.1 Apply health and safety measures relevant to vision screening  4.2 Apply standard precautions for infection control  4.3 Confirm the individual's identity and obtain valid consent  4.4 Explain the procedure to the individual according to their level of understanding, age and development  4.5 Communicate accurate information in a way that is sensitive to the personal beliefs and preferences of the individual

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

	4.6	Carry out vision screening in accordance with local policy and protocol
5	5.1	Reassure the individual throughout the activity
	5.2	Refer the individual to the relevant service in accordance with local policy and protocol
	5.3	Record and report outcomes of the activity in line with local policy and protocol

## Unit F/602/3128

# Assist professionals to support individuals from diverse linguistic and cultural backgrounds to access speech and language therapy services

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice related to supporting individuals from diverse linguistic and cultural backgrounds to access speech and language therapy services	1.1 Summarise current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice guidelines for supporting individuals from diverse linguistic and cultural backgrounds to access speech and language therapy services
	1.2 Explain own responsibilities and accountability in relation to providing assistance as an interpreter
2 Understand the communication needs and abilities of individuals from diverse linguistic and cultural backgrounds	2.1 Explain the difference in developmental norms between English and another specialist language
	2.2 Describe the factors which affect the patterns of development and breakdown of language, phonology and articulatory accuracy of a group of individuals from a particular linguistic and cultural background
	2.3 Describe the factors which must be considered when developing activities and materials for different individuals from diverse linguistic and cultural backgrounds
3 Understand how to provide speech and language therapy related care and support for individuals from diverse linguistic and cultural backgrounds	3.1 Identify potential barriers to individuals from diverse linguistic and cultural backgrounds accessing speech and language therapy services
	3.2 Explain how to tailor speech and language care and support for different age groups and cultural needs
	3.3 Describe ways of working with appropriate professionals to support individual care pathways

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
4 Know the types of information and materials required to support individuals from diverse linguistic and cultural backgrounds to access speech and language therapy services	4.1 Identify the types of linguistic and cultural advice and information required by professionals to support individuals to access speech and language therapy services  4.2 Identify support materials and equipment required to support an individual's therapy  4.3 Outline how to prepare, produce and order materials and equipment
5 Be able to assist professionals in providing support for individuals and significant others from diverse linguistic and cultural backgrounds	5.1 Provide interpretations between professionals, the individual and significant others  5.2 Advise professionals on linguistic and phonetic aspects that are specific to the language of the individual  5.3 Provide speech and language therapy related care and support to professionals, the individual and significant others  5.4 Provide linguistic, phonetic and cultural advice to professionals in order to support the individual's care pathway  5.5 Assist professionals to identify potential barriers to the individual accessing services  5.6 Assist professionals to prepare, produce and order materials for use with bilingual/non-English speaking individuals

## Unit F/602/3517

### Implement hydrotherapy programmes for individuals and groups

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice related to implementing hydrotherapy programmes	1.1 1 Summarise the current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice guidelines which inform own role when implementing hydrotherapy programmes 2 Explain the importance of only working within own scope of practice
2 Know musculo skeletal aspects of the body	2.1 1 Identify the main bones, muscle groups and joints of the body 2 Describe the functions of muscle, ligaments and tendons 3 Describe the normal ranges of movement of the main joints in the body
3 Understand the principles of hydrotherapy practice	3.1 1 Describe the principles and main benefits of hydrotherapy 2 Identify the potential dangers and adverse reactions related to hydrotherapy and the actions to be taken 3 Describe response procedures to follow in emergency situations in hydrotherapy 4 Explain the reasons for respecting the vulnerability of individuals in the hydrotherapy environment 5 Explain the importance of taking refreshment and rest during hydrotherapy programmes 6 Describe the applications of hydrotherapy equipment
4 Be able to implement hydrotherapy programmes	4.1 1 Check the environment is suitable for hydrotherapy programmes 2 Obtain valid consent from the individual 3 Assist the individual to enter/exit the pool 4 Carry out specified activities under direction of the practitioner as outlined in the treatment goals 5 Monitor the safety and well-being of the individual during and after treatment in line with national/local policy and protocol

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:**

**Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- |   |   |     |   |
|---|---|-----|---|
| 5 | Be able to report to the practitioner on the outcomes of the hydrotherapy programme | 6   | Explain the importance of monitoring an individual's condition during hydrotherapy programmes                             |
|   |   | 7   | Ensure self and individual take rest and refreshment as appropriate   |
|   |   | 5.1 | 1 Make records of the programme activities and the individual's condition in line with national/local policy and protocol |
|   |   |     | 2 Feedback information to the practitioner to inform future planning  |

## Unit F/602/3520

### Deliver exercise sessions to improve individuals' health and wellbeing

Learning Outcome - The learner will:		Assessment Criterion - The learner can:	
1	Understand current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice related to delivering exercise sessions	1.1	1. Summarise the current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice guidelines which inform own practice in delivering exercise sessions
2	Understand the role of exercise and its physical effects	2.1	1 Describe the physical effects of exercise 2 Outline main aspects of cardiovascular anatomy and physiology which are relevant to exercise 3 Explain the role of exercise in improving self-esteem, confidence and motivation
3	Understand the principles and rationales for exercise programmes	3.1	1 Explain what is meant by FITT principles and their application to exercise sessions 2 Describe the principles used in designing and developing exercise sessions 3 Explain the importance of using warm up and cool down exercises as part of a session 4 Describe potential adverse reactions to exercise and the procedures for dealing with them 5 Explain factors in risk assessment for exercise sessions for individuals and groups 6 Describe ways to measure and evaluate individuals' responses to exercise
4	Understand the use of exercise equipment	4.1	1 Describe the functions and limitations of exercise equipment encountered in own work practice
5	Be able to deliver exercise sessions	5.1	1 Instruct individuals to carry out exercise activities 2 Adapt exercise sessions in response to changes in the individuals' condition, needs, abilities and goals

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:**

**Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

3 Give encouragement and feedback to promote individuals' confidence and motivation

4 Collaborate with individuals to agree on intended outcomes of exercise sessions

5 Plan future goals with individuals to meet their needs and abilities

6 Make records of all aspects of exercise sessions in line with national/local policy and protocol

## Unit F/602/3954

### Provide support to the surgical team when preparing individuals for operative and invasive procedures

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand how to prepare individuals for operative and invasive procedures in line with national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice	1.1 Explain how to apply standard precautions to the preparation of individuals for operative and invasive procedures 1.2 Explain the importance of applying standard precautions to the health and safety of individuals 1.3 Identify potential sources of contamination when preparing individuals for operative and invasive procedures 1.4 Explain the dangers of re using single use equipment
2 Understand the factors to be considered in the choice of surgical instruments and supplementary items during operative procedures	2.1 Identify the types, purpose and functions of surgical instruments and supplementary items used in the surgical environment 2.2 Describe potential hazards of using surgical instruments and ways to minimise the risk of harm 2.3 Explain the factors affecting the choice of surgical instruments and supplementary items 2.4 Identify the factors which inform the choice of sites for attachment of surgical instruments 2.5 Explain how different types of skin preparation agents and surgical drapes are used in the surgical environment to provide barriers to cross infection
3	3.1 Confirm the individual's identity and gain valid consent

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
	<p>3.2 Apply standard precautions for infection control</p> <p>3.3 Implement health and safety measures relevant to the procedure and environment</p> <p>3.4 Identify the individual's operative site, clarifying any queries with the appropriate person</p> <p>3.5 Support others to prepare the individual for an operative or invasive procedure, maximising their dignity, comfort and safety</p>
<p>4 Be able to support others to prepare individuals for operative and invasive procedures</p> <p>4 Be able to select, handle and dispose of surgical instruments and supplementary items for operative and invasive procedures</p>	<p>4.1 Select and handle surgical instruments and supplementary items safely and in line with the manufacturers' instructions</p> <p>4.2 Select an appropriate site in the sterile field for attaching surgical instruments and supplementary items</p> <p>4.3 Account for and record all items and swabs used in the preparation of the operative site in line with local policies and protocols</p> <p>4.4 Dispose of waste generated during surgical preparation in line with local policies and protocols</p>

## Unit H/601/8049

### Facilitate person centred assessment, planning, implementation and review

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand the principles of person centred assessment and care planning	1.1 Explain the importance of a holistic approach to assessment and planning of care or support 1.2 Describe ways of supporting the individual to lead the assessment and planning process 1.3 Describe ways the assessment and planning process or documentation can be adapted to maximise an individual's ownership and control of it
2 Be able to facilitate person centred assessment	2.1 Establish with the individual a partnership approach to the assessment process 2.2 Establish with the individual how the process should be carried out and who else should be involved in the process 2.3 Agree with the individual and others the intended outcomes of the assessment process and care plan 2.4 Ensure that assessment takes account of the individual's strengths and aspirations as well as needs 2.5 Work with the individual and others to identify support requirements and preferences
3 Be able to contribute to the planning of care or support	3.1 Take account of factors that may influence the type and level of care or support to be provided 3.2 Work with the individual and others to explore options and resources for delivery of the plan 3.3 Contribute to agreement on how component parts of a plan will be delivered and by whom 3.4 Record the plan in a suitable format

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:**

**Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- |   |   |     |  |
|---|---|-----|--|
| 4 | Be able to support the implementation of care plans                   | 4.1 | Carry out assigned aspects of a care plan  |
|   |   | 4.2 | Support others to carry out aspects of a care plan for which they are responsible  |
|   |   | 4.3 | Adjust the plan in response to changing needs or circumstances   |
| 5 | Be able to monitor a care plans                                       | 5.1 | Agree methods for monitoring the way a care plan is delivered  |
|   |   | 5.2 | Collate monitoring information from agreed sources   |
|   |   | 5.3 | Record changes that affect the delivery of the care plan   |
| 6 | Be able to facilitate a review of care plans and their implementation | 6.1 | Seek agreement with the individual and others about: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• who should be involved in the review process</li><li>• criteria to judge effectiveness of the care plan</li></ul> |
|   |   | 6.2 | Seek feedback from the individual and others about how the plan is working   |
|   |   | 6.3 | Use feedback and monitoring/other information to evaluate whether the plan has achieved its objectives   |
|   |   | 6.4 | Work with the individual and others to agree any revisions to the plan   |
|   |   | 6.5 | Document the review process and revisions as required  |

## Unit H/601/8147

### Work in partnership with families to support individuals

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand partnership working with families	1.1 Analyse the contribution of families to the care and/or support of individuals 1.2 Identify factors that may affect the level of involvement of family members in care and/or support 1.3 Describe dilemmas or conflicts that may arise when working in partnership with families to support individuals 1.4 Explain how the attitudes of a worker affect partnership working with families
2 Be able to establish and maintain positive relationships with families	2.1 Interact with family members in ways that respect their culture, experiences and expertise 2.2 Demonstrate dependability in carrying out actions agreed with families 2.3 Describe principles for addressing dilemmas or conflicts that may arise in relationships with families
3 Be able to plan shared approaches to the care and support of individuals with families	3.1 Agree with the individual, family members and others the proposed outcomes of partnership working with a family 3.2 Clarify own role, role of family members, and roles of others in supporting the individual 3.3 Support family members to understand person centred approaches and agreed ways of working 3.4 Plan ways to manage risks associated with sharing care or support 3.5 Agree with the individual and family member's processes for monitoring the shared support plan

<b>Learning Outcome - The learner will:</b>		<b>Assessment Criterion - The learner can:</b>	
4	Be able to work with families to access support in their role as carers	4.1	Work with family members to identify the support they need to carry out their role
		4.2	Provide accessible information about available resources for support
		4.3	Work with family members to access resources
5	Be able to exchange and record information about partnership work with families	5.1	Exchange information with the individual and family members about: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• implementation of the plan</li> <li>• changes to needs and preferences</li> </ul>
		5.2	Record information in line with agreed ways of working about: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• progress towards outcomes</li> <li>• effectiveness of partnership working</li> </ul>
6	Be able to contribute to reviewing partnership work with families	6.1	Agree criteria and processes for reviewing partnership work with families
		6.2	Agree criteria and processes for reviewing support for family members
		6.3	Encourage the individual and family members to participate in the review
		6.4	Carry out own role in the review of partnership working
7	Be able to provide feedback about support for families	7.1	Provide feedback to others about the support accessed by family members
		7.2	Report on any gaps in the provision of support for family members
		7.3	Describe ways to challenge information or support that is discriminatory or inaccessible

## Unit H/601/9492

### Support individuals to develop and run support groups

Learning Outcome - The learner will:		Assessment Criterion - The learner can:	
1	Understand the role of support groups	1.1	Explain the benefits of support groups to individuals
		1.2	Explain how involvement in setting up and running a support group can affect the identity, self-esteem and self-image of individuals
		1.3	Compare key points of theories about group dynamics
2	Be able to support individuals to assess the need for additional support groups	2.1	Work with individuals to identify the support a group could provide for them
		2.2	Contribute to accessing sources of information about existing support groups
		2.3	Work with individuals to evaluate existing support groups and identify gaps in provision
3	Be able to support individuals to develop their own support groups	3.1	Work with individuals to identify ways to develop their own support group where there is a gap in provision
		3.2	Work with individuals to agree the nature and purpose of the support group
		3.3	Establish with individuals the level and type of support they require to set up a group
		3.4	Carry out own role as agreed to support the setting up of the group
4	Be able to support individuals to run support groups	4.1	Establish with group members the support they need to run the group
		4.2	Support the group to operate safely
		4.3	Support the group to resolve conflicts
5	Be able to support individuals to evaluate support groups	5.1	Support the group to monitor its activities and outcomes

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:**

**Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- 5.2 Support the group to:
- agree processes and criteria for evaluating its activities and outcomes
  - evaluate its activities and outcomes
- 5.3 Report on the effectiveness of the support group in line with agreed ways of working

## Unit H/602/0965

# Monitor own work practice in health, social care or children's and young people's settings

Learning Outcome - The learner will:		Assessment Criterion - The learner can:	
1	Understand the importance of monitoring work practices	1.1	Explain the statutory and professional standards and codes of practice as applied to own work practice
		1.2	Explain how deviations from agreed working procedures may impact on outcomes to be achieved
		1.3	Explain actions to take and the timescales for responding to cases of non-compliance or variance with quality standards
		1.4	Describe how to access advice and support for quality improvement
2	Be able to prepare to carry out monitoring activities	2.1	Identify and agree the purpose, method and requirements for monitoring work activities and outcomes
		2.2	Allocate monitoring activities at regular intervals consistent with legal, professional and organisational requirements
		2.3	Adjust the frequency of monitoring where necessary to ensure compliance with quality systems and whenever risks are identified
		2.4	Obtain the correct and complete data relevant to the monitoring activity
3	Be able to carry out monitoring activities	3.1	Monitor work activities and outcomes against relevant quality indicators and standards
		3.2	Access information in line with local policy
		3.3	Report any non-compliance or variance in work activities and outcomes against relevant quality indicators
4		4.1	Review monitoring results to improve working practices and outcomes

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:**

**Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| Be able to respond to the outcomes of monitoring activities | 4.2 Act on any recommendations to improve performance and quality outcomes  |
|   | 4.3 Review any changes to working practices as required in order to confirm and sustain improvements                                    |
|   | 4.4 Maintain clear, accurate and complete records of monitoring activities and outcomes in accordance with local policies and protocols |

## Unit H/602/1033

### Perform first line calibration on clinical equipment to ensure it is fit for use

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice which impact on own role	1.1 Summarise the current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice guidelines which affect clinical practice in relation to first line calibration
	1.2 Describe the standard operating procedures and policies and explain their importance
2 Understand the procedures involved in the calibration of equipment	2.1 Explain the importance of accuracy and precision when calibrating equipment
	2.2 Explain how to check for validity and reliability when calibrating equipment
	2.3 Identify the common faults in equipment and explain the corrective action that should be taken
	2.4 Explain how to recognise the factors which could affect safety or pose a risk associated with the use of equipment
	2.5 Identify the corrective action that should be taken
3 Be able to run tests on equipment	3.1 Undertake tests/checks to confirm the operational status of equipment
	3.2 Select reference material to calibrate equipment for operation
	3.3 Use standards to undertake the calibration of equipment for the intended purpose
	3.4 Follow procedures to confirm the accuracy, precision and operational effectiveness of equipment
	3.5 Confirm the equipment is suitable and ready to use

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- |   |  |     |   |
|---|--|-----|---|
| 4 | Be able to conclude and report on tests on equipment | 4.1 | Record the validity and reliability of the calibration procedure  |
|   |  | 4.2 | Identify any equipment that does not meet calibration standards and take action to prevent accidental use   |
|   |  | 4.3 | Notify the appropriate person of the status of equipment following calibration, seeking advice as necessary |

## Unit H/602/3123

### Monitor and review individuals progress in relation to maintaining optimum nutritional status

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand how to monitor and review individuals' progress in relation to maintaining optimum nutritional status	1.1 Explain how to create a suitable environment for open and confidential discussions and for taking body measurements 1.2 Outline the types of information to gather from an individual in order to assess their progress 1.3 Identify the body measurements which must be taken in order to assess an individual's progress 1.4 Explain how to review an individual's food diary 1.5 Explain how to provide constructive feedback and encouragement to an individual regarding their progress
2 Be able to monitor individuals' progress in maintaining optimum nutritional status	2.1 Prepare an environment which is suitable for open and confidential discussions and for taking body measurements 2.2 Confirm the individual's identity and gain valid consent prior to taking body measurements 2.3 Obtain information from the individual regarding their experience in following a nutritional plan 2.4 Take an individual's body measurements in line with local policy and protocol 2.5 Interpret body measurements against standard measures
3 Be able to support individuals to review their own progress in relation	3.1 Support an individual to review their own progress against agreed objectives

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
to maintaining optimum nutritional status	3.2 Provide constructive feedback and affirm the individual's progress
	3.3 Suggest potential modifications to the nutritional plan which are consistent with nutritional objectives
	3.4 Reaffirm the benefits of adhering to the nutritional plan and lifestyle changes in relation to their effect on health
	3.5 Update records in line with local policy and protocol
	3.6 Record any further actions to be taken by the individual

## Unit H/602/3168

### Give presentations to groups

Learning Outcome - The learner will:		Assessment Criterion - The learner can:	
1	Understand current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice related to group presentations.	1.1	Summarise the current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice guidelines which inform own practice in giving presentations.
2	Understand factors which contribute to effective group presentations.	2.1	Explain how to devise aims and objectives for a presentation
		2.2	Explain how to choose from a range of presentation techniques to meet the needs of the audience
		2.3	Appraise emerging developments in e-technology and its relevance to presentation techniques and materials.
3	Be able to plan a presentation to facilitate learning.	3.1	Explain how to structure presentations to maximise understanding
		3.2	Explain how to anticipate barriers to understanding and how they can be overcome
		3.3	Plan presentation delivery taking account of the audiences' needs and context of delivery
		3.4	Choose and prepare materials and resources
		3.5	Adapt presentation content to suit the needs of the audience.
4	Be able to present information to a group.	4.1	Use materials and resources to support understanding
		4.2	Present clear information in a manner and pace in line with the group's needs

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- 4.3 Encourage the group to ask questions
- 4.4 Reiterate key points at suitable intervals
- 4.5 Monitor the groups understanding and adapt own presentation style in line with audience responses
- 4.6 Summarise information to conclude the presentation
- 4.7 Gain feedback from the audience and evaluate their understanding from the presentation to inform future delivery.

## Unit H/602/3980

### Support individuals in undertaking their chosen activities

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice when supporting individuals to undertake chosen activities	1.1 Summarise the current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice guidelines which inform own practice in supporting individuals to undertake their chosen activities
2 Understand concepts for supporting individuals to undertake chosen activities	2.1 Explain factors which could motivate an individual to change behaviour and/or lifestyle  2.2 Explain the benefits to the individual's sense of well-being and personal development which can be gained when accessing services and facilities  2.3 Describe how to identify the physical, psychological and social demands of an individual's chosen activities  2.4 Describe how to set the individual SMART goals
3 Be able to make plans with individuals to undertake chosen activities	3.1 Maintain the individual's privacy and dignity at all times  3.2 Access and interpret any previous assessment of the individual's needs to inform future requirements  3.3 Communicate sensitively and actively listen to the individual or relevant other to establish an understanding of their needs, interests, values and beliefs  3.4 Identify the physical, social, safety and psychological demands of the chosen activities  3.5 Agree with the individual, steps to develop their ability to undertake their chosen activities

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
	<p>3.6 Identify the range of local services and facilities available,</p> <p>3.7 Check availability and evaluate the relevance with the individual</p> <p>3.8 Identify and agree with the individual any information, resources, adaptations and assistance required to access and use chosen services and facilities</p>
<p>4 Be able to support individuals to undertake chosen activities</p>	<p>4.1 Organise any required resources, adaptations and assistance to enable the individual to access chosen activities</p> <p>4.2 Support and motivate an individual to access and undertake their chosen activities in line with own sphere of competence and national/local policy</p> <p>4.3 Describe coping strategies that an individual may require to fulfil their chosen activities</p> <p>4.4 Evaluate and review the effectiveness of the activities in line with national/local policy</p> <p>4.5 Maintain clear records of advice and support given to the individual and any agreed actions in accordance with national/ local policy</p>

## Unit H/602/4014

### Control the use of physical resources in a health setting

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand how to control the use of physical resources in a health setting in line with local policy and protocol	1.1 Explain the principles and systems which underpin expenditure control 1.2 Explain organisational requirements for expenditure control, authorisation procedures and record keeping, including standing financial instructions 1.3 Describe corrective action to take in response to actual variations from agreed budget 1.4 Describe corrective action to take in response to potential variations from agreed budgets 1.5 Describe how to respond to requests for additional expenditure, in line with local policy and protocol 1.6 Describe the importance of effective expenditure control 1.7 Describe the importance of accurate and comprehensive record keeping to expenditure control and systems to achieve this
2 Be able to advise team members on the control of expenditure and physical resource usage in a health setting	2.1 Prepare advisory information for team members on the control of expenditure and resource usage 2.2 Set targets for team members to take responsibility for monitoring and controlling expenditure
3 Be able to monitor expenditure and physical resource usage in a health setting	3.1 Monitor expenditure and physical resource use against local targets 3.2 Control expenditure and physical resource use in line with budgets and local requirements, including taking action in response to actual or potential variations from budget

## Unit H/602/4708

### Support children and young people experiencing transitions

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand the impact of transitions on children and young people	1.1 Define the term 'transitions' in relation to children and young people 1.2 Describe the types of transitions that children and young people can experience 1.3 Explain how different types of transitions impact children and young people
2 Understand how to support children and young people experiencing transitions	2.1 Outline how to recognise that a child or young person is experiencing transition 2.2 Explain how to support children and young people experiencing transitions to reach positive outcomes 2.3 Explain the importance of children and young people making choices appropriate to their age and stage of development
3 Understand influences on children and young people experiencing transitions	3.1 Describe factors which influence children and young people's resilience during transitions 3.2 Explain the importance of adults and significant others for children and young people experiencing transitions

## Unit J/601/1434

# Promote communication in health, social care or children's and young people's settings

Learning Outcome - The learner will:		Assessment Criterion - The learner can:	
1	Understand why effective communication is important in the work setting	1.1	Identify the different reasons people communicate
		1.2	Explain how communication affects relationships in the work setting
2	Be able to meet the communication and language needs, wishes and preferences of individuals	2.1	Demonstrate how to establish the communication and language needs, wishes and preferences of individuals
		2.2	Describe the factors to consider when promoting effective communication
		2.3	Demonstrate a range of communication methods and styles to meet individual needs
		2.4	Demonstrate how to respond to an individual's reactions when communicating
3	Be able to overcome barriers to communication	3.1	Explain how people from different backgrounds may use and/or interpret communication methods in different ways
		3.2	Identify barriers to effective communication
		3.3	Demonstrate ways to overcome barriers to communication
		3.4	Demonstrate strategies that can be used to clarify misunderstandings
		3.5	Explain how to access extra support or services to enable individuals to communicate effectively
4	Be able to apply principles and practices relating to confidentiality	4.1	Explain the meaning of the term confidentiality
		4.2	Demonstrate ways to maintain confidentiality in day to day communication

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:**

**Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- 4.3 Describe the potential tension between maintaining an individual's confidentiality and disclosing concerns

## Unit J/502/1631

# Contribute to the prevention of aggressive and abusive behaviour of people

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Be able to take action to discourage aggressive and abusive behaviour of people	<p>1.1 Approach individual/s in a manner which is likely to be perceived as non-threatening and which is consistent with any legal and organisational constraints</p> <p>1.2 Communicate with individual/s in a manner which:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>(i) is free from discrimination and oppression</li><li>(ii) is not likely to antagonise the situation</li><li>(iii) encourages an open exchange of information</li><li>(iv) is appropriate</li><li>(v) acknowledges the rights of everyone present</li></ul> <p>1.3 Explain clearly to the individual what your role is and the required outcome of the encounter</p> <p>1.4 Ensure your behaviour towards individual/s is supportive of diverting aggression or abuse, and resolving the situation peacefully</p> <p>1.5 Monitor the situation and give appropriate warnings to people who are becoming aggressive or abusive consistent with good practice and relevant legislation.</p> <p>1.6 Take appropriate action if the situation deteriorates</p>
2 Understand the actions to take to discourage aggressive and abusive behaviour of people	<p>2.1 Describe the signs of potentially disruptive behaviour - verbal and non-verbal</p> <p>2.2 Explain how the principles of equality, diversity and anti-discriminatory practice apply and the dangers of stereotyping</p> <p>2.3 Explain how to communicate effectively and how this may promote the behaviour wanted</p> <p>2.4 Explain how your own behaviour and language could be interpreted</p>

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:**

**Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- 2.5 Describe the types of constructive behaviour and techniques which can be taken to diffuse situations
- 2.6 Describe actions that could trigger aggressive or abusive behaviour
- 2.7 Explain the warnings which may be necessary to give people in relation to their behaviour
- 2.8 Explain the importance of constantly assessing the risks of a situation and what actions to take if the situation deteriorates
- 2.9 Summarise how to report and record incidents of abusive and aggressive behaviour

## Unit J/502/3413

### Service improvement in the health sector

Learning Outcome - The learner will:		Assessment Criterion - The learner can:	
1	Understand how to evaluate own work and that of others to identify potential improvements	1.1	Illustrate how to benchmark own work and that of others
		1.2	Explain how feedback can be obtained and used to identify potential service improvements
		1.3	Review the policies and strategies for service improvements
2	Understand how to make constructive suggestions about how services can be improved	2.1	Explain key issues related to potential improvements
		2.2	Explain why service improvements are required
		2.3	Discuss how service improvements could be implemented
3	Understand how to discuss and agree improvements with others	3.1	Explain the importance of agreeing changes with others
		3.2	Illustrate how working with others can support service improvements
4	Understand how to make agreed improvements to own work and how to support others to make changes	4.1	Evaluate strategies for making changes effective within own work role
		4.2	Explain how to support others in implementing changes

## Unit J/601/3538

### Understand the process and experience of dementia

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand the neurology of dementia.	1.1 Describe a range of causes of dementia syndrome.
	1.2 Describe the types of memory impairment commonly experienced by individuals with dementia.
	1.3 Explain the way that individuals process information with reference to the abilities and limitations of individuals with dementia.
	1.4 Explain how other factors can cause changes in an individual's condition that may not be attributable to dementia.
	1.5 Explain why the abilities and needs of an individual with dementia may fluctuate.
2 Understand the impact of recognition and diagnosis of dementia.	2.1 Describe the impact of early diagnosis and follow up to diagnosis.
	2.2 Explain the importance of recording possible signs or symptoms of dementia in an individual in line with agreed ways of working.
	2.3 Explain the process of reporting possible signs of dementia within agreed ways of working.
	2.4 Describe the possible impact of receiving a diagnosis of dementia on <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• the individual</li><li>• their family and friends.</li></ul>
3 Understand how dementia care must be underpinned by a person centred approach.	3.1 Compare a person centred and a non-person centred approach to dementia care.
	3.2 Describe a range of different techniques that can be used to meet the fluctuating abilities and needs of the individual with dementia.

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- 3.3 Describe how myths and stereotypes related to dementia may affect the individual and their carer's.
- 3.4 Describe ways in which individuals and carers can be supported to overcome their fears.

## Unit J/601/6150

### Understand Physical Disability

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand the importance of differentiating between the individual and the disability	1.1 Explain the importance of recognising the centrality of the individual rather than the disability  1.2 Explain the importance of an assessment being person centred  1.3 Compare the difference in outcomes that may occur between focusing on an individual's strengths and aspirations rather than their needs only
2 Understand the concept of physical disability	2.1 Define the term physical disability  2.2 Describe the following terminology used in relation to physical disability: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• congenital</li> <li>• acquired</li> <li>• neurological</li> </ul> 2.3 Compare a congenital disability with a neurological disability, including causes  2.4 Explain the emotional impact of a progressive disability on the individual  2.5 Compare the different impacts on individuals that congenital and progressive disabilities can have
3 Understand the impact of living with a physical disability within society	3.1 Describe environmental and social barriers that can have a disabling effect on an individual with a physical disability  3.2 Analyse the socio-economic effects of physical disability on an individual  3.3 Explain the changes that have occurred in society as a result of Disability legislation

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:**

**Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- |   |   |     |  |
|---|---|-----|--|
| 4 | Understand the importance of promoting inclusion and independence | 3.4 | Analyse the extent of improvements for the individual as a result of Disability legislation      |
|   |   | 3.5 | Explain the effects of physical disability on an individual's life choices                       |
|   |   | 3.6 | Explain how attitudes either promote a positive or negative perception of disability             |
|   |   | 4.1 | Explain the importance of independence and inclusion for individuals with physical disabilities  |
|   |   | 4.2 | Analyse ways that inclusion and independence can be promoted                                     |
|   |   | 4.3 | Explain the importance of the individual having control of choices and decisions                 |
|   |   | 4.4 | Analyse the importance of positive risk-taking for the individual with physical disabilities     |
|   |   | 4.5 | Explain how to encourage the individual to take positive risks while maintaining safety          |
|   |   | 4.6 | Explain strategies you may use to challenge stereotypes, prejudicial or discriminatory attitudes |

## Unit J/601/8657

### Support individuals with a learning disability to access healthcare

Learning Outcome - The learner will:		Assessment Criterion - The learner can:	
1	Understand legislation, policies and guidance relevant to individuals with learning disabilities accessing healthcare	1.1	Describe what is meant by a rights based approach to accessing healthcare
		1.2	Outline the main points of legislation that exists to support a rights based approach
		1.3	Explain the requirements of legislation if an individual with learning disabilities is assessed to not have capacity to consent to a specific treatment decision
		1.4	Explain different ways to support an individual to give informed consent in line with legislation, policies or guidance
		1.5	Explain ways in which healthcare services should make 'reasonable adjustments' to ensure that they provide equal access to individuals with learning disabilities
2	Understand the function of different healthcare services that an individual with learning disabilities may need to access	2.1	Explain the work of healthcare services that an individual with learning disabilities may need to access
		2.2	Explain how an individual can access each type of healthcare service
3	Understand the role of professionals within different healthcare services that a person with learning disabilities may need to access	3.1	Describe the role and responsibility of professionals working in different types of healthcare services
4	Understand how plans for healthcare and regular health checks underpin long-term health and well-being for individuals with learning disabilities	4.1	Explain how plans for healthcare can be used to support the healthcare needs of an individual with learning disabilities
		4.2	Explain the range of health checks available to individuals to support good health and wellbeing
		4.3	Explain the importance of routine healthcare checks

<b>Learning Outcome - The learner will:</b>		<b>Assessment Criterion - The learner can:</b>	
5	Be able to complete and review plans for healthcare	5.1	Identify who needs to be involved in the process of completing and reviewing plans for healthcare
		5.2	Complete plans for healthcare with an individual or significant others if appropriate
		5.3	Review plans for healthcare with an individual or significant others if appropriate
6	Understand the issues that an individual with learning disabilities may face when accessing a variety of healthcare services	6.1	Describe barriers to accessing healthcare services that an individual with learning disabilities may experience
		6.2	Explain ways to overcome barriers to accessing healthcare services
		6.3	Explain why an individual with learning disabilities may face additional barriers when accessing healthcare services
7	Be able to support an individual with learning disabilities when accessing a variety of healthcare services	7.1	Use a person-centred approach to support an individual to access healthcare services
		7.2	Provide accessible information related to healthcare to individuals
		7.3	Work with others when supporting an individual to access healthcare services
		7.4	Support individuals in a range of practical healthcare situations
		7.5	Support the individual to make safe choices with regard to treatments and medication
		7.6	Record details of a healthcare visit in a format that an individual with learning disabilities can understand

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- 7.7 Identify an individual's needs to healthcare professionals to ensure that the service can be accessed

**Unit J/601/8979****Undertake urethral catheterisation processes****Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- |   |  |     |  |
|---|--|-----|--|
| 1 | Understand relevant legislation, policy and good practice in relation to carrying out urethral catheterisation | 1.1 | Describe the current legislation, national guidelines, and local policies and protocols which affect work practice |
|   |  | 1.2 | Identify the correct procedures relating to urethral catheterisation   |
|   |  | 1.3 | Explain the conditions and constraints which might denote who undertakes this procedure and why                    |
|   |  | 1.4 | Identify when good practice suggests it may be necessary to seek assistance from an appropriate member of staff    |
|   |  | 1.5 | Describe the ethical issues surrounding catheterisation, as applied to males and females                           |
| 2 | Understand the relevant anatomy and physiology   | 2.1 | Describe the anatomy and physiology of the male and / or female genito-urinary system                              |
| 3 | Be able to prepare to insert urethral catheters  | 3.1 | Identify the types of catheters that can be used   |
|   |  | 3.2 | Select an appropriate catheter   |
|   |  | 3.3 | Describe the local anaesthetic agents available for use when inserting urethral catheters                          |
|   |  | 3.4 | Confirm the individual's identity and obtain valid consent   |

<b>Learning Outcome - The learner will:</b>		<b>Assessment Criterion - The learner can:</b>	
4	Be able to insert urethral catheters	4.1	Ensure the individual's privacy and dignity is maintained at all times
		4.2	Apply standard precautions for infection control
		4.3	Apply health and safety measures relevant to the procedure and environment
		4.4	Insert the catheter safely and correctly, with minimal trauma to the individual including <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• securing the catheter</li> <li>• adjust it correctly</li> <li>• attach it correctly to the appropriate drainage system</li> </ul>
5	Be able to monitor and care for the urethral catheter after insertion	5.1	Monitor the catheterisation equipment and materials to check they are functioning correctly
		5.2	Empty draining bags
		5.3	Measure and record the amount of urine collected immediately after insertion and as often as required according to care plan
		5.4	Maintain cleanliness of the catheter and surrounding area through regular hygiene care as required
		5.5	Take appropriate action to remedy any problems when these arise
6	Be able to care for and support the individual during and after the procedure	6.1	Assess how comfortable the individual is, taking steps to improve the individual's comfort during and after the procedure
		6.2	Identify adverse effects and appropriate actions
		6.3	Communicate information to the individual on the care of the catheter and attachments

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:**

**Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- 6.4 Demonstrate sensitivity and understanding of the effects of catheterisation on the individual's comfort and dignity

## Unit J/601/9470

# Promote good practice in handling information in health and social care settings

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand requirements for handling information in health and social care settings	1.1 Identify legislation and codes of practice that relate to handling information in health and social care  1.2 Summarise the main points of legal requirements and codes of practice for handling information in health and social care
2 Be able to implement good practice in handling information	2.1 Describe features of manual and electronic information storage systems that help ensure security  2.2 Demonstrate practices that ensure security when storing and accessing information  2.3 Maintain records that are up to date, complete, accurate and legible
3 Be able to support others to handle information	3.1 Support others to understand the need for secure handling of information  3.2 Support others to understand and contribute to records

## Unit J/602/0103

### Understand mental health problems

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Know the main forms of mental ill health	<p>1.1</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Describe the main types of mental ill health according to the psychiatric (DSM/ICD) classification system: mood disorders, personality disorders, anxiety disorders, psychotic disorders, substance-related disorders, eating disorders, cognitive disorders.</li> <li>2. Explain the key strengths and limitations of the psychiatric classification system.</li> <li>3. Explain two alternative frameworks for understanding mental distress.</li> <li>4. Explain how mental ill health may be indicated through an individual's emotions, thinking and behaviour.</li> </ol>
2 Know the impact of mental ill health on individuals and others in their social network	<p>2.1</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Explain how individuals experience discrimination due to misinformation, assumptions and stereotypes about mental ill health.</li> <li>2. Explain how mental ill health may have an impact on the individual including:               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. psychological and emotional</li> <li>b. practical and financial</li> <li>c. the impact of using services</li> <li>d. social exclusion</li> <li>e. positive impacts</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. Explain how mental ill health may have an impact on those in the individual's familial, social or work network including:               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. psychological and emotional</li> <li>b. practical and financial</li> <li>c. the impact of using services</li> <li>d. social exclusion</li> <li>e. positive impacts</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. Explain the benefits of early intervention in promoting an individual's mental health and well-being.</li> </ol>

## Unit J/602/0960

### Perform routine Electrocardiograph \_ECG\_ Procedures

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice which impact on own role	1.1 Summarise the current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice guidelines for performing routine electrocardiograph procedures
	1.2 Explain own responsibilities and accountability in relation to current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice guidelines
	1.3 Explain the duty to report any acts or omissions in care that could be detrimental
2 Understand the purpose and functions of electrocardiographs	2.1 Explain the purpose of electrocardiograph procedures
	2.2 Describe the type, common characteristics and set up requirements of recording devices used in electrocardiograph procedures
	2.3 Explain the structure and function of the heart
	2.4 Identify a normal electrocardiograph and relate this to the conduction system of the heart
	2.5 Describe the correct positioning of electrodes for at rest and ambulatory procedures
	2.6 Explain why it is important to position electrodes correctly
	2.7 Identify potential sources of artefact and explain how to recognise them
3 Be able to prepare to carry out routine electrocardiograph procedures	3.1 Implement health and safety measures relevant to routine electrocardiograph procedures

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- |   |     |   |
|---|-----|---|
|   | 3.2 | Apply standard precautions for infection control  |
|   | 3.3 | Confirm the individual's identity, reason for referral and obtain valid consent   |
|   | 3.4 | Confirm the individual is fit to undergo the procedure  |
|   | 3.5 | Inform the individual and carers on the procedure and requirements for their compliance                                 |
|   | 3.6 | Identify any factors or special needs which may affect the test or test results   |
|   | 3.7 | Seek guidance where alternative arrangements are required to meet special needs   |
|   | 3.8 | Establish the suitability of the equipment for the procedure  |
|   | 3.9 | Prepare sites and position electrodes, considering any special needs that have been identified                          |
| 4 | 4.1 | Be able to carry out routine electrocardiograph procedures  |
|   | 4.2 | Inform the individual and their carers on the procedure and the next action   |
|   | 4.3 | Check that an individual's privacy and dignity is maintained at all times   |
|   | 4.4 | Communicate information in a way that is sensitive to the personal beliefs and preferences of the individual            |
|   | 4.5 | Encourage the individual to relax and remain immobile throughout a resting electrocardiograph                           |
|   | 4.6 | Check the individual understands the need for recording signs and symptoms, throughout an ambulatory electrocardiograph |

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:**

**Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- 4.6 Label documents and recording devices in line with local policy and protocol

## Unit J/602/3101

### Undertake treatments and dressings of lesions and wounds

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand safety measures specific to undertaking treatments and dressings of lesions and wounds	1.1 1. Summarise the current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice guidelines which inform undertaking treatments and dressings of lesions and wounds. 2. Explain the importance of maintaining compliance with health and safety guidance at all times 3. Explain the importance of using aseptic techniques which follow local guidelines and procedures. 4. Explain the importance of wearing personal protective equipment
2 Understand wound infection and healing	2.1 1 Define and explain asepsis, antisepsis and cross infection 2 Describe the aspects of the anatomy and physiology of the skin which inform the application of dressings 3. Explain the process of wound healing and identify factors which promote and delay the process 4. Outline potential sources and consequences of wound contamination and appropriate measures to avoid and deal with these
3 Understand the rationale for carrying out procedures when treating wounds/lesions	3.1 1. Identify the types and functions of equipment, materials and dressings used in own work area 2. Explain the importance of following procedures outlined in the Care Plan and the potential consequences of poor practice
4 Be able to prepare to treat and dress lesions and wounds	4.1 1. Identify own responsibilities and accountability with regard to legislation, policies and procedures while caring for lesions/wounds 2. Confirm the individual's identity and gain valid consent to carry out the procedure 3. Provide information, support and reassurance to address the individual's needs and concerns

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:**

**Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

			<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>4. Confirm all equipment and materials to be used are fit for purpose as outlined in the Care Plan</li><li>5. Maintain the sterility of dressings prior to and during application</li></ul>
5	Be able to carry out treatments and dressings to lesions/wounds	5.1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Apply standard precautions for infection control</li><li>2. Implement health and safety measures relevant to the procedure and environment</li><li>3. Scrutinise the lesion/wound for any change in appearance</li><li>4. Explain the importance of referring any changes in the wound/lesion or adverse reactions which are outside own competence to the practitioner</li><li>5. Carry out treatments using techniques as outlined in the care plan.</li><li>6. Observe the individual for adverse reactions while carrying out treatment in accordance with the Care Plan</li><li>7. Apply/attach dressings in line with the Care Plan</li><li>8. Dispose of hazardous waste before leaving the care area</li></ul>
6	Be able to record and report outcomes of the activities	6.1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Record outcomes of the activity in line with national/local policy</li><li>2. Report the outcomes of the activity to a member of the care team in line with national/local policy</li></ul>

## Unit J/602/3521

### Adapt and fit healthcare equipment, medical devices, assistive technology, or products, to meet individuals' needs

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand relevant legislation, policy and good practice related to adapting and fitting healthcare equipment, medical devices, assistive technology, associated systems or products to meet individuals' needs	1.1 1 Describe current legislation, national guidelines, local policies, protocols and good practice guidelines related to adapting and fitting healthcare equipment, medical devices, assistive technology, associated systems or products 2 Outline own roles, responsibilities and accountability when adapting and fitting prescribed items 3 Outline the procedures and systems used within own work place for authorising prescribed items 4 Explain the importance of handover procedures for the prescribed item
2 Understand anatomy and physiology relevant to adapting and fitting prescribed items to meet individuals' needs	2.1 1 Outline the aspects of anatomy and physiology which impact on adapting and fitting prescribed items within own role
3 Understand specialist technical requirements of healthcare equipment, medical devices, assistive technology, associated systems or products	3.1 1 Identify the measurements and limits of use for the prescribed items encountered in own work practice to ensure any adaptation maintains its <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Integrity</li><li>• safety</li><li>• fitness for purpose</li></ul> 2 Identify the range of measurements used in adaptations of prescribed items encountered in own work practice, to ensure specification of the original prescription is met 3 Explain the importance of checking the impact of a prescribed item on other devices and systems used by the individual 4 Identify the parameters used when assessing the fit of prescribed items encountered in own role 5 Describe the process of making minor adjustments to ensure best fit and comfort for prescribed items

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
<p>4 Be able to adapt prescribed items to meet individuals' needs</p>	<p>4.1</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Liaise with those involved in the adaptation and check authorisation for the work</li> <li>2 Check that the prescribed item conforms to required standards</li> <li>3 Make adaptations in line with prescribed recommendations, in accordance with national/local policy and protocol</li> <li>4 Confirm the prescribed item is in safe working order within expected performance parameters</li> <li>5 Inform those involved and the individual that the prescribed item is ready for fitting</li> <li>6 Record details of the adjustments in line with national/local policy</li> </ol>
<p>5 Be able to fit prescribed items to meet the needs of individuals</p>	<p>5.1</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Confirm the individual's identity and gain valid consent</li> <li>2 Explain to the individual the purpose and instruct in the use of the prescribed item</li> <li>3 Maintain compliance with health and safety guidance at all times</li> <li>4 Apply standard precautions for infection control</li> <li>5 Fit the prescribed item and activate, if necessary,</li> <li>6 Check the safety and performance measurements of the prescribed item</li> <li>7 Ensure the item is comfortable, acceptable and meets the individual's needs and clinical requirements</li> <li>8 Hand over the prescribed item with documentation, instructions on maintenance and how to report malfunction</li> <li>9 Record details of the fitting and instruction process in line with national/local policy</li> </ol>

## Unit J/602/4006

### Administer oral nutritional products to individuals

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand how to administer oral nutritional products to individuals in line with current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice guidelines	1.1 Summarise current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice guidelines affecting own practice related to administering oral nutritional products 1.2 Explain how to take information from medication administration charts to inform the administration of oral nutritional products 1.3 Explain how to prepare oral nutritional products 1.4 Explain how to ensure the dignity, safety and privacy of an individual during the procedure 1.5 Explain how to check if the individual has taken the oral nutritional product
2 Understand common nutritional products and their uses	2.1 Describe common nutritional products and their uses 2.2 Explain how common nutritional products should be stored 2.3 Describe the effects of common nutritional products, relevant to the individuals' condition 2.4 Explain the importance of information labelling of nutritional products
3 Understand how to manage possible reactions to the use of nutritional products	3.1 Describe common adverse reactions to nutritional products and how to recognise them 3.2 Explain how to deal with common adverse reactions

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
	<p>3.3 Explain how to deal with non-compliance when attempting to administer nutritional products</p> <p>3.4 Identify support staff to help manage reactions to the use of nutritional products</p> <p>3.5 Explain how to minimise risk of any hazards and complications occurring during the administration of nutritional products</p>
<p>4 Be able to prepare for oral administration of nutritional products</p>	<p>4.1 Apply standard precautions for infection control</p> <p>4.2 Apply health and safety measures relevant to administering nutritional products</p> <p>4.3 Confirm the individual's identity and gain valid consent prior to administering nutritional products</p> <p>4.4 Check the individual's administration record for accuracy prior to administering nutritional products, taking any necessary action</p> <p>4.5 Explain the procedure to the individual in a way that is sensitive to their personal beliefs and preferences</p> <p>4.6 Prepare an individual to receive oral administration of nutritional products</p> <p>4.7 Select and prepare nutritional products according to the administration record and standard hygiene precautions</p> <p>4.8 Select materials, equipment and aids which can be used for the oral administration of nutritional products</p>
<p>5</p>	<p>5.1 Administer oral nutritional products to an individual according to the</p>

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
<p>Be able to administer oral nutritional products to individuals</p>	<p>administration record and in a way which minimises pain, discomfort and trauma for the individual</p> <p>5.2 Monitor the individual's condition throughout, recognising any adverse effects and taking appropriate action immediately</p> <p>5.3 Dispose of waste products in line with local policy and protocol</p> <p>5.4 Update records in line with local policy and protocol</p>
<p>6 Be able to maintain stock of nutritional products</p>	<p>6.1 Monitor and rotate stock levels, reporting any discrepancies to the appropriate person</p> <p>6.2 Maintain the correct storage conditions for oral nutritional products</p> <p>6.3 Dispose of out of date and part-used nutritional products in line with local policy and protocol</p> <p>6.4 Maintain stock records</p>

## Unit K/601/3483

### Promote effective communication with individuals with sensory loss

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand the importance of effective two-way communication	1.1 Identify the features of two-way communication 1.2 Explain why two-way communication is important for individuals with sensory loss 1.3 Explain how own role can impact on the dynamics of two-way communication with individuals with sensory loss
2 Understand different methods that can support communication with individuals with sensory loss	2.1 Research the different methods that are used to support communication with individuals with sensory loss 2.2 Identify the characteristics of communication that is not based on formal language systems
3 Be able to support the individual with communication	3.1 Agree with an individual and / or others preferred methods of communication. 3.2 Prepare the environment to facilitate effective communication 3.3 Use agreed methods of communication with an individual 3.4 Check the effectiveness of communication with the individual throughout the interaction
4 Evaluate the effectiveness of methods of communication used to support an individual with sensory loss	4.1 Evaluate the effectiveness of the use of agreed methods of communication with an individual and / or others 4.2 Contribute to the identification of further support needs of individuals with sensory loss to support the continued development of communication skills 4.3 Make suggestions to improve the use of agreed methods of communication to individuals and / or others

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- 4.4 Reflect on own practice on the use of agreed methods of communication
- 4.5 Adapt own practice to meet the needs of the individual

## Unit K/601/6190

### Work with other professionals and agencies to support individuals with physical disability

Learning Outcome - The learner will:		Assessment Criterion - The learner can:	
1	Understand the contribution that other professionals and agencies can make to support individuals with physical disabilities	1.1	Describe circumstances when it would be important to involve other professionals
		1.2	Explain the different referral processes to gain the support of other professionals
		1.3	Describe provision from across specialist agencies
		1.4	Analyse the impact specialist agencies have on providing a wider menu of services for the individual
		1.5	Describe the values and skills which underpin joint working with other professionals and agencies
2	Be able to assess the needs of individuals with physical disabilities for inclusive social care provision	2.1	Assess when an individual's needs require input from other agencies and professionals
		2.2	Give the individual information about provision options so that informed choices can be made
		2.3	Agree with the individual what they hope to achieve through referral to another agency and/or professional
3	Be able to demonstrate partnership working	3.1	Make a referral to other professionals and/or agencies in the agreed way
		3.2	Use verbal and written communication skills in making the individual's needs and wishes known
		3.3	Work in partnership with other agencies and or professionals to support the individual to meet their needs

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:**

**Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- 3.4 Evaluate the outcomes for the individual of partnership working
- 3.5 Document the work carried out with other professionals and or agencies

## Unit K/601/7906

### Support individuals to access housing and accommodation services

Learning Outcome - The learner will:		Assessment Criterion - The learner can:	
1	Understand support available to access housing and accommodation services	1.1	Identify sources of funding and benefits that are available for housing and accommodation services
		1.2	Analyse the range of housing and accommodation services available
		1.3	Explain how and where to access specialist information and advice about housing and accommodation services
2	Be able to work with individuals to identify housing and accommodation services that meet their needs	2.1	Work with an individual to identify their accommodation requirements
		2.2	Work with the individual to understand the range of accommodation services that could meet their needs
		2.3	Support the individual to understand requirements that may be made by housing and accommodation services
3	Be able to work with individuals to plan to access housing and accommodation services	3.1	Work with the individual and others to agree a plan for accessing housing and accommodation services
		3.2	Establish with an individual which housing and accommodation services will be approached
4	Be able to work with individuals to access housing and accommodation services	4.1	Support the individual to prepare to attend meetings with housing and accommodation services
		4.2	Work with the individual to provide accurate and complete information to express their requirements and preferences
		4.3	Support the individual to understand the outcome of decisions made by a housing or accommodation service

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
	4.4 Describe ways to challenge discrimination in accessing housing and accommodation services
5 Be able to work with housing and accommodation services to meet the needs of individuals	5.1 Provide housing and accommodation services with information about own role and responsibilities  5.2 Demonstrate continued contact with housing and accommodation staff to ensure individual needs are being met
6 Be able to contribute to the review of housing and accommodation services for individuals	6.1 Work with the individual and others to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• monitor the effectiveness and consistency of the service in meeting the individual's needs and preferences</li> <li>• identify any additional support needed</li> </ul> 6.2 Consult with others about any problems and proposed solutions  6.3 Record and report on the review in line with agreed ways of working

## Unit K/602/2684

### Identify information requirements in a health context

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice related to identifying data requirements in a health context	1.1 Summarise the current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice guidelines for information management in a health context
	1.2 Describe the health and business context for data and information requirements
	1.3 Explain the different ways in which routine and ad hoc data and information are used in a health context
2 Be able to find and select data requirements in a health context	2.1 Respond to the target audiences needs for the data and information
	2.2 Consult with colleagues and the target audience to identify requirements for data and information
	2.3 Describe the objectives and purpose of the data
	2.4 Describe any sensitivity of the data and information involved
	2.5 Identify the data and information available
	2.6 Gain agreement to access the sources of data and information identified
	2.7 Select the data and information relevant to the target audience
	2.8 Describe any data limitations which may constrain the audience's requirements
	2.9 Describe any system limitations which may constrain the audience's requirements

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
<p>3 Be able to prepare resources to retrieve the agreed data and information</p>	<p>3.1 Identify any variables that may affect the data and information to be provided</p> <p>3.2 Check the audience understands the meaning and significance of any variables</p> <p>3.3 Agree conformity with information governance in line with local policy and protocol</p> <p>3.4 Identify the resources required and the limitations, assumptions, costs and timescales that will affect the work to be carried out</p> <p>3.5 Record the details required for the specification in line with local policy and protocol</p> <p>3.6 Agree reporting responsibilities and mechanisms with the target audience</p> <p>3.7 Describe the classification systems, coding classifications and terminology used in a health context</p> <p>3.8 Explain how to identify audience requirements for data and information</p> <p>3.9 Describe ways in which it is or is not possible to meet requirements for data and information</p> <p>3.10 Describe ways in which data and information is grouped in a health context</p>

## Unit K/602/2720

### Prepare and reproduce permanent radiographic images

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand the legislation and codes of practice related to the preparation and reproduction of radiographic images	1.1 Summarise the current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice guidelines for preparing and reproducing permanent radiographic images
2 Understand the materials and techniques involved in preparing and reproducing permanent images	2.1 Explain why radiographic images and other materials must be handled carefully
	2.2 Explain why radiographic images and other materials must be correctly identified and labelled
	2.3 Explain the types and amounts of materials to use with different processors
	2.4 Explain how to prepare materials for use with different processors
	2.5 Explain the equipment, materials and systems to use for different radiographic image production and reproduction processes
	2.6 Explain the different stages of film processing and preparation
	2.7 Explain the procedures associated with using different radiographic image production and reproduction equipment and materials
3 Prepare equipment and materials to process radiographic images	3.1 Confirm that the equipment is in good working order and fully operational prior to use
	3.2 Select image production and reproduction materials or systems appropriate to the modality, type of permanent image required and the method of image storage
	3.3 Monitor and maintain heating, lighting, ventilation and humidity at correct levels for the process and the materials being used

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
<p>4 Carry out the processing of radiographic images</p>	<p>4.1 Operate and handle equipment, materials or systems in line with local policy and protocol</p> <p>4.2 Explain how to identify and remedy any faults or minimise any damage to equipment and materials</p> <p>4.3 Label images where they are not automatically identified in line with local policy and protocol</p> <p>4.4 Prepare radiographic images for distribution</p>
<p>5 Monitor the processing procedure for radiographic images</p>	<p>5.1 Monitor heating, lighting, ventilation and humidity at correct levels for the process and the materials being used throughout procedure</p> <p>5.2 Confirm the quality of permanent radiographic images in line with local standards and protocol</p> <p>5.3 Record where the quality of permanent radiographic images does not meet local standards and protocol</p> <p>5.4 Explain the remedial action to take if the quality of any image does not meet local standards and protocol</p> <p>5.5 Explain why the quality of processing equipment and procedures must be regularly monitored</p>

## Unit K/602/3124

### Develop and prepare speech and language therapy resources for alternative and augmentative communication AAC use

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand how resources are used to support individuals who use alternative and augmentative communication (AAC) systems	1.1 Outline the factors to take into account when determining the type of resources required by individuals  1.2 Explain why different therapies may require different resources  1.3 Explain why resources must match the specified communication goals of an individual  1.4 Explain the importance of working with professionals in the development of resources  1.5 Explain how copyright impacts on use of resources
2 Be able to determine the resource needs of individuals who use AAC systems	2.1 Discuss with the individual his/her communication needs  2.2 Discuss with the Speech and Language Therapist the types of resources required by the individual in relation to: - the AAC system used - the type of therapy required - specified communication goals - ability and interests  2.3 Identify relevant materials, equipment and resources that are suitable for the individual
3 Be able to cost and order materials, equipment and resources for individuals who use AAC systems	3.1 Cost materials, equipment and resources that are suitable for the individual  3.2 Order materials, equipment and resources that are suitable for the

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
<p>4 Be able to develop resources for individuals who use AAC systems</p>	<p>individual in line with policy and protocol</p> <p>4.1 Develop and/or adapt resources for an individual who uses AAC systems</p> <p>4.2 Check that the resources are not hazardous to the individual or self</p> <p>4.3 Implement health and safety measures relevant to developing resources for individuals who use AAC systems</p>

## Unit K/602/3169

### Carry out wound drainage care

Learning Outcome - The learner will:		Assessment Criterion - The learner can:	
1	Understand safety measures specific to undertaking wound drainage care	1.1	Summarise the current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice guidelines which inform undertaking wound drainage care
		1.2	Explain the importance of maintaining compliance with health and safety guidance at all times
		1.3	Explain the importance of using aseptic techniques which follow local guidelines and procedures.
2	Understand the principles of wound drainage and use of related equipment	2.1	Explain the principles of wound drainage
		2.2	Describe the types, purposes and function of wound drainage measurement materials and equipment
		2.3	Describe the aspects of the anatomy and physiology of the skin and underlying structures which affect the positioning of wound drains and care
		2.4	Describe methods and techniques for preparing and applying drains and dressings and the potential consequences of their contamination
3	Understand procedures and techniques involved in wound drainage	3.1	Explain the importance of following the Care Plan and the potential effects of poor practice
		3.2	Explain the purpose of measuring wound drainage and how to avoid potential hazards
		3.3	Explain the importance of differentiating between body fluids and introduced fluids when measuring fluid loss
		3.4	Describe the process of disposal of hazardous waste and equipment
4	Be able to prepare for wound drainage care	4.1	Confirm the individual's identity and gain valid consent to carry out the activity

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:**

**Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- |   |  |   |
|---|--|---|
|   | 4.2  | Communicate information in a way that is reassuring and sensitive to the personal beliefs and preferences of the individual |
|   | 4.3  | Implement health and safety measures relevant to the procedure and the environment  |
|   | 4.4  | Apply standard precautions for infection control  |
|   | 4.5  | Confirm all equipment and materials are fit for purpose   |
|   | 4.6  | Apply standard precautions for infection control and prevention   |
|   | 4,7  | Support and reassure the individual prior to wound drainage.  |
| 5 | Be able to carry out wound drainage care             |   |
|   | 5.1  | Use techniques and equipment to observe and measure wound drainage in line with the Care Plan                               |
|   | 5.2  | Explain the importance of referring any changes or adverse reactions which are outside own competence to the practitioner   |
|   | 5.3  | Attach replacement drainage collection systems, maintaining sterility and the individual's comfort and dignity              |
|   | 5.4  | Check drains and seals are secure, intact and functioning   |
|   | 5.5  | Dispose of hazardous waste and equipment in line with local policies and procedures   |
| 6 | Be able to record and report outcomes from procedure |   |
|   | 6.1  | Record and report measurement and outcomes of the activity in line with national/local policy                               |

## Unit K/602/3950

### Prepare and provide surgical instrumentation and supplementary items for the surgical team

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand how to prepare and provide surgical instrumentation and items for the surgical team in line with health and safety procedures and protocols	1.1 Explain how the sterile field contributes to infection control in the operative setting 1.2 Explain how to maintain the sterile field during surgical procedures and the actions to take if it is compromised 1.3 Explain the types, purposes and functions of commonly used surgical instruments and the potential hazards associated with their use 1.4 Describe common supplementary items and their use during surgery 1.5 Explain the procedures for identifying and reporting problems with instruments and items during preparation and throughout the procedure 1.6 Explain the principles and techniques for counting instruments, sharps, swabs and supplementary items and the importance of these
2 Be able to prepare surgical instruments and supplementary items for the surgical team	2.1 Apply standard precautions for infection control 2.2 Maintain compliance with health and safety guidance at all times 2.3 Check surgical instruments and supplementary items before preparation and confirm as being within expiry date, safe and fit for purpose

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- |   |   |     |   |
|---|---|-----|---|
| 3 | Be able to provide surgical instruments and supplementary items for the surgical team | 2.4 | Select and prepare required surgical instruments and supplementary items for the procedure  |
|   |   | 2.5 | Set up surgical instruments and supplementary items to meet the needs of the operative procedure and the patients plan of care  |
|   |   | 2.6 | Count and record instruments, sharps, swabs and supplementary items prior to commencing the procedure in line with local policies and protocols                                 |
|   |   | 3.1 | Handle instruments and supplementary items in line with local policies and protocols while maintaining the integrity of the sterile field                                       |
|   |   | 3.2 | Anticipate the needs of the surgical team by monitoring their activities and the placement of items within the surgical field   |
|   |   | 3.3 | Clarify any uncertainty over the requirements of the surgical team with the appropriate person  |
|   |   | 3.4 | Provide instrumentation and supplementary items to meet the needs of the surgical team and the individual's plan of care  |
|   |   | 3.5 | Count and record instruments, sharps, swabs and supplementary items during the process and prior to close and completion in line with national and local policies and protocols |
|   |   | 3.6 | Inform the surgical team of instrument and supplementary item counts during the   |

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

<b>Learning Outcome - The learner will:</b>	<b>Assessment Criterion - The learner can:</b>
4 Be able to dispose of waste from the sterile field	procedure in line with local policies and protocols
	4.1 Dispose of and transfer used instruments and supplementary items to the non-sterile area for accounting, tracking and traceability in line with local policies and protocols
	4.2 Update records in line with national guidelines
	4.3 Remove and dispose of drapes in line with local policies and protocols
	4.4 Maintain the dignity of the individual throughout the procedure in line with local policy and protocol

## Unit K/602/4015

### Care for a newly born baby when the mother is unable to do so

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice guidelines related to caring for newborn babies when the mother is unable to do so	1.1 Summarise current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice guidelines related to caring for newborn babies when the mother is unable to do so  1.2 Describe local policies for child safety and protection  1.3 Explain how to work in partnership with parents/carers and significant others  1.4 Explain the rights and responsibilities of parents/carers for their child and own role in relation to this  1.5 Explain how to obtain advice and information to support own practice  1.6 Explain how to report any concerns about the parent/carer or child's health, safety or wellbeing in line with local policy and protocol  1.7 Explain how to access records and information on the needs and preferences of babies, parents and carers, in line with local policy and protocol  1.8 Explain the importance of confidentiality when accessing records and information
2 Understand how to meet the physical, social, emotional and developmental needs of newborns	2.1 Explain how babies develop in the first 10 days of life and factors that might enhance or inhibit this  2.2 Describe the normal state of newborn babies

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
	<p>2.3 Describe the physical, social and emotional developmental needs of babies during the first 10 days of life</p> <p>2.4 Explain how to anticipate and respond to the needs of newborn babies using non-verbal cues</p> <p>2.5 Explain the health, safety and hygiene requirements of newborn babies</p> <p>2.6 Explain the importance of providing consistency and continuity of care for newborn babies</p> <p>2.7 Explain how to protect the rights and interests of babies</p>
<p>3 Be able to contribute to the safety of newborn babies within care</p>	<p>3.1 Engage, relate to and interact with a newborn baby in ways that encourage the development of relationships</p> <p>3.2 Create a care environment which ensures the newborn baby is safe, secure and free from danger, harm and abuse</p> <p>3.3 Handle, move and position the baby safely to encourage interaction and help them feel secure, in line with local policy and protocol</p> <p>3.4 Confirm the identity of anyone who wants to handle the baby, checking that identification labels are secure and visible</p> <p>3.5 Update and store records in line with local policy and protocol</p>
<p>4 Be able to feed, bathe and clothe newborn babies in line with local policy and protocol</p>	<p>4.1 Apply standard precautions for infection control</p> <p>4.2 Apply health and safety measures relevant to the procedure and environment</p>

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- 4.3 Prepare the environment and equipment for feeding, bathing and clothing newborn babies
- 4.4 Prepare equipment and a feed according to the individual requirements of the baby
- 4.5 Position the baby safely, securely and comfortably, in line with local policy and protocol
- 4.6 Dispose of leftover food in line with local policy and protocol
- 4.7 Undress the baby, wash, bathe and dry them, following safe hygiene and care principles
- 4.8 Observe skin condition, treating any dryness or soreness
- 4.9 Dress the baby in a clean nappy and suitable clothes for the environmental conditions and temperature
- 4.10 Dispose of soiled nappies, clean and store equipment in line with local policy and protocol
- 4.11 Update records, referring any observations and actions to the appropriate person

## Unit L/601/1693 Understand Child and Young Person Development.

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand the expected pattern of development for children and young people from birth - 19 years.	1.1 Explain the sequence and rate of each aspect of development from birth – 19 years.  1.2 Explain the difference between sequence of development and rate of development and why the difference is important.
2 Understand the factors that influence children and young people’s development and how these affect practice.	2.1 Explain how children and young people’s development is influenced by a range of personal factors  2.2 Explain how children and young people’s development is influenced by a range of external factors  2.3 Explain how theories of development and frameworks to support development influence current practice.
3 Understand how to monitor children and young people’s development and interventions that should take place if this is not following the expected pattern.	3.1 Explain how to monitor children and young people’s development using different methods.  3.2 Explain the reasons why children and young people’s development may not follow the expected pattern.  3.3 Explain how disability may affect development.  3.4 Explain how different types of interventions can promote positive outcomes for children and young people where development is not following the expected pattern
4 Understand the importance of early intervention to support the speech, language and communication needs of children and young people.	4.1 Analyse the importance of early identification of speech, language and communication delays and disorders and the potential risks of late recognition.

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- |   |   |     |   |
|---|---|-----|---|
| 5 | Understand the potential effects of transitions on children and young people's development. | 4.2 | Explain how multi agency teams work together to support speech, language and communication.                     |
|   |   | 4.3 | Explain how play and activities are used to support the development of speech, language and communication.      |
|   |   | 5.1 | Explain how different types of transitions can affect children and young people's development.                  |
|   |   | 5.2 | Evaluate the effect on children and young people of having positive relationships during periods of transition. |

## Unit L/601/8028

### Provide support to maintain and develop skills for everyday life

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand the context of supporting skills for everyday life	1.1 Compare methods for developing and maintaining skills for everyday life
	1.2 Analyse reasons why individuals may need support to maintain, regain or develop skills for everyday life
	1.3 Explain how maintaining, regaining or developing skills can benefit individuals
2 Be able to support individuals to plan for maintaining and developing skills for everyday life	2.1 Work with an individual and others to identify skills for everyday life that need to be supported
	2.2 Agree with the individual a plan for developing or maintaining the skills identified
	2.3 Analyse possible sources of conflict that may arise when planning and ways to resolve them
	2.4 Support the individual to understand the plan and any processes, procedures or equipment needed to implement or monitor it
3 Be able to support individuals to retain, regain or develop skills for everyday life	3.1 Provide agreed support to develop or maintain skills, in a way that promotes active participation
	3.2 Give positive and constructive feedback to the individual during activities to develop or maintain their skills
	3.3 Describe actions to take if an individual becomes distressed or unable to continue
4	4.1 Work with an individual and others to agree criteria and processes for evaluating support

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

Be able to evaluate support for developing or maintaining skills for everyday life

- 4.2 Carry out agreed role to evaluate progress towards goals and the effectiveness of methods used
- 4.3 Agree revisions to the plan
- 4.4 Record and report in line with agreed ways of working

## Unit L/601/8644

### Facilitate learning and development activities to meet individual needs and preferences

Learning Outcome - The learner will:		Assessment Criterion - The learner can:	
1	Understand the role of learning and development activities in meeting individual needs	1.1	Describe the benefits to individuals of engaging in learning or development activities
		1.2	Analyse the purpose of a range of learning or development activities in which individuals may participate
		1.3	Explain how individual needs and preferences may influence how learning and development activities are accessed or delivered
2	Be able to identify learning and development activities to meet individual needs and preferences	2.1	Support the individual to communicate their goals, needs and preferences about learning or development activities
		2.2	Provide the individual and others with information on possible learning or development activities
		2.3	Assess whether a tailor made activity may be more beneficial to an individual than other learning or development opportunities
		2.4	Work with the individual and others to agree learning or development activities that will suit the individual
3	Be able to plan learning and development activities with individuals	3.1	Describe factors that may affect the way a programme of learning or development activities is implemented and supported
		3.2	Establish with the individual and others a plan for implementing the programme of activities
		3.3	Assess risks in line with agreed ways of working
4	Be able to prepare for learning and development activities	4.1	Obtain or prepare resources or equipment needed for the activity

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
	<p>4.2 Describe how resources or equipment might be adapted to meet the needs of an individual</p> <p>4.3 Support the individual to prepare for an activity so as to minimise risks and maximise their participation</p> <p>4.4 Prepare the environment so that the activity can be carried out safely and effectively</p>
<p>5 Be able to facilitate learning and development activities with individuals</p>	<p>5.1 Carry out agreed role in facilitating the activity</p> <p>5.2 Support the individual to engage with the activity in a way that promotes active participation</p> <p>5.3 Encourage the individual to give feedback about how the activity is implemented and the support provided</p> <p>5.4 Make adjustments in response to feedback</p>
<p>6 Be able to evaluate and review learning and development activities</p>	<p>6.1 Agree with the individual and others the process and criteria for evaluation of the activity and the support provided</p> <p>6.2 Collate and present information for evaluation as agreed</p> <p>6.3 Use agreed criteria to evaluate the activity with the individual and others</p> <p>6.4 Make recommendations for any changes in the activity, its implementation or the support provided</p> <p>6.5 Explain the importance of recognising progress achieved through a learning or development activity</p>

## Unit L/601/9034

### Enable individuals with behavioural difficulties to develop strategies to change their behaviour

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand how legislation, policies and practice affect the support provided to individuals to manage their behaviour.	1.1 Describe how legislation affects policy and practice when working with individuals to manage their behaviour  1.2 Describe the methods and approaches available to help an individual change their behaviour
2 Understand the factors that influence behaviour.	2.1 Explain how different factors relating to the individual can affect behaviour  2.2 Describe the potential effects of the environment and the behaviour of others on individuals
3 Be able to work with individuals to recognise the impact of their behaviour on others	3.1 Describe why it is important to establish a professional relationship with an individual and others when working on behaviour management  3.2 Work with individuals and others to gather and review information  3.3 Support the individual and others significant to the individual to recognise their behavioural responses to different situations  3.4 Encourage the individual to consider the impact of their behaviour
4 Be able to enable people to develop strategies for changing behavioural responses	4.1 Work with an individual to identify and agree the factors which will motivate them to change their behaviour  4.2 Explain to an individual the positive outcomes of changing behaviours  4.3 Support an individual to identify situations and circumstances which trigger specific behavioural responses

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- |   |     |   |
|---|-----|---|
|   | 4.4 | Explore with the individual ways of coping with situations and circumstances which trigger behaviour they wish to change                      |
|   | 4.5 | Work with the individual to identify and agree coping strategies they are willing to use  |
|   | 4.6 | Support an individual to develop and practise the agreed strategies and to sustain their motivation   |
|   | 4.7 | Record the individual's agreement and motivation to change their behaviour in line with agreed ways of working                                |
|   | 4.8 | List any potential barriers to progress and ways in which these barriers can be addressed   |
|   | 4.9 | Describe the additional advice and support available when an individual does not engage with the process                                      |
| 5 |     | Be able to evaluate and review strategies for changing behavioural responses  |
|   | 5.1 | Conduct regular reviews   |
|   | 5.2 | Assist the individual and others significant to the individual to evaluate the effectiveness of strategies for changing behavioural responses |
|   | 5.3 | Use the positive outcomes identified through the review process to motivate the individual  |
|   | 5.4 | Give constructive feedback on progress  |
|   | 5.5 | Encourage individuals to find ways in which to sustain their behaviour change   |
|   | 5.6 | Record what has and has not been achieved and identify any future work required   |
|   | 5.7 | Report the results of the review to all those who have a right and need to receive them   |



## Unit L/602/2676

### Reprocess endoscopy equipment

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice related to the reprocessing of endoscopy equipment	1.1 Summarise the current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice guidelines for related to the reprocessing of endoscopy equipment  1.2 Explain own responsibilities and accountability in relation to current legislation, national guidelines, organisational policies and protocols which affect work practice when carrying out the reprocessing of endoscopy equipment
2 Understand the procedures involved in reprocessing endoscopy equipment	2.1 Explain the endoscopic procedures, equipment, and sedation that are used  2.2 Describe the admission and discharge procedures for reprocessing endoscopic equipment  2.3 Explain the sources of authoritative information on endoscopic procedures, including evidence based information
3 Carry out the reprocessing procedure	3.1 Check that all endoscopy equipment is accounted for after the endoscopic procedure  3.2 Maintain compliance with health and safety guidance at all times relevant to reprocessing endoscopy equipment  3.3 Test reprocessing equipment prior to use  3.4 Reprocess the endoscopy equipment in accordance with local policy and protocol  3.5 Dispose of any used, damaged, or out of date items in accordance with local policy and protocol  3.6 Restore the endoscopy equipment and environmental conditions in preparation for the next procedure

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:**

**Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

4 Report and record on the reprocessing of endoscopy equipment

4.1 Report any endoscopy or reprocessing equipment that is not functioning correctly or requires maintenance

4.2 Keep records in accordance with local policy and procedure

4.3 Liaise with the individual, relevant others, and agencies in line with local policy and protocol

## Unit L/602/3097

### Support individuals with cognition and learning difficulties

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice related to supporting individuals with cognition and learning difficulties	1.1 1 Summarise the current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice guidelines which inform own role
2 Understand cognitive and learning difficulties	2.1 1 Identify the cognitive skills required for learning 2 Explain the different effects on learning of global learning difficulties and specific learning difficulties 3 Explain how cognitive difficulties affect language development and communication 4 Identify the effects of learning difficulties on perception, memory and information processing 5 Describe the cognition and learning difficulties encountered in own practice and the implications on providing support for learning activities 6 Explain the importance of active learning for individuals with cognition and learning difficulties and how this can be promoted 7 Explain the potential effects of medication on individuals with cognition and learning difficulties
3 Be able to assist the therapist to prepare learning activities	3.1 1 Obtain information about the individual's cognition and learning needs and the planned learning activities 2 Work with the therapist to identify approaches to enable and motivate the individual to develop learning strategies 3 Obtain and use suitable equipment and materials 4 Adapt teaching and learning materials at the direction of the therapist to suit the individual's learning needs 5 Describe modifications to learning activities which can be made to improve an individual's progress

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
<p>4 Be able to support individuals with learning tasks</p>	<p>4.1</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Support, encourage, praise and reassure the individual to help them with learning tasks and following instructions</li> <li>2 Provide information, advice and opportunities to enable and encourage the individual to decide on own learning</li> <li>3 Monitor the individual's responses to learning activities and use appropriate strategies to improve achievement</li> <li>4 Use a range of methods to help the individual understand the environment and the use of objects</li> <li>5 Sequence and structure learning activities and the environment as directed by the therapist so the individual develops <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• organisational skills</li> <li>• information processing skills</li> <li>• problem solving skills</li> </ul> </li> <li>6 Explain the use of Educational/Behaviour Support plans</li> </ol>
<p>5 Be able to assist in reviewing learning</p>	<p>5.1</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Feed back to the therapist on the individual's learning achievements and any problems encountered</li> <li>2 Help individuals to review their achievements and plan for future learning</li> </ol>

## Unit L/602/3519

### Assist in testing individuals' abilities prior to planning physical activities

Learning Outcome - The learner will:		Assessment Criterion - The learner can:	
1	Understand current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice related to assisting in testing individuals prior to planning physical activities	1.1	Summarise the current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice guidelines which inform own role
2	Understand health related topics in relation to physical activities	2.1	Outline cardiovascular: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Anatomy</li><li>• Physiology</li><li>• Biochemistry</li></ul>
		2.2	Describe the bio-physical-social model of health as it relates to own role
		2.3	Identify factors which cause limitations to physical activity
		2.4	Define rating of perceived exertion and the methods used to calculate this
3	Understand motivation factors for physical activities	3.1	Explain how to motivate individuals to become involved in exercise regimes
		3.2	Explain factors which could motivate individuals to change behaviour and/or lifestyle
4	Be able to carry out preparations to assess individuals' ability to exercise	4.1	Obtain the individual's valid consent to the assessment process
		4.2	Prepare environmental conditions for carrying out assessment in line with national/local policy and protocol
		4.3	Consult previous assessments and check individual's medication history

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
5 Be able to assist the practitioner to administer tests to assess individuals' ability to exercise	<p>4.4 Explain the importance of accessing previous assessments and medication history</p> <p>5.1 Outline the tests used in own work practice to assess individuals' physical abilities</p> <p>5.2 Assist the practitioner to administer tests to assess the individual's ability to exercise</p> <p>5.3 Identify the individual's present and former levels of physical activity</p> <p>5.4 Establish the individual's goals in relation to physical activity</p> <p>5.5 Report any medical limitations on the individual's physical activity</p> <p>5.6 Identify the individual's rating of perceived exertion</p> <p>5.7 Record the individual's exercise capacity in line with national/local policy and protocol</p>

## Unit L/602/4007

### Support individuals to manage dysphagia

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand how to support individuals to manage dysphagia in line with current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice guidelines	1.1 Summarise current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice guidelines related to supporting individuals with dysphagia  1.2 Describe why individuals with dysphagia should be encouraged to promote their own health and wellbeing  1.3 Describe the types of skill development activities that can be carried out with individuals to help them develop swallowing skills
2 Understand how dysphagia affects individuals	2.1 Describe the main clinical causes of dysphagia  2.2 Outline how to recognise the main types of dysphagia  2.3 Identify major risks and secondary difficulties associated with dysphagia  2.4 Describe the anatomy and physiology relevant to maintaining a safe swallow  2.5 Explain how an individual's ability to swallow is affected by: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• sensory impairment</li> <li>• loss of bodily function</li> <li>• loss of cognition</li> </ul> 2.6 Explain how to provide a suitable environment for affected individuals
3 Know the importance of nutritional intake for individuals with dysphagia	3.1 Describe the impact of oral intake on nutrition for an individual with dysphagia  3.2 Describe safe practices with regard to preparing oral intake

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
<p>4 Be able to support individuals in managing dysphagia by developing skills through participating in therapy programmes</p>	<p>3.3 Identify reasons for modifying the consistency and appearance of oral intake for an individual with dysphagia</p> <p>4.1 Confirm the individual's identity and gain valid consent prior to carrying out the therapy programme</p> <p>4.2 Explain the skill development activities to the individual/carer</p> <p>4.3 Support the individual's active participation with skill development activities as specified in the individual's care programme, seeking advice from the care team if the level of support required by the individual is beyond own scope of practice</p> <p>4.4 Provide oral intake in the consistency and appearance outlined in the individual's care programme</p> <p>4.5 Provide the individual with sufficient time to practice newly developed skills</p> <p>4.6 Provide the individual/carer with information and advice, as instructed by the specialist, in regards to self-management</p>
<p>5 Be able to provide information to colleagues regarding individuals' treatment</p>	<p>5.1 Update records regarding the support provided, in line with local policy and protocol</p> <p>5.2 Provide feedback to the individual's therapist and care team to aid future care planning</p>

## Unit L/602/4010

### Provide advice on foot care for individuals with diabetes

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand good practice in diabetic foot care	1.1 Summarise national and local guidelines on diabetes healthcare
	1.2 Describe local referral pathways for foot health
2 Understand the factors affecting foot health in individuals with diabetes	2.1 Explain the causes of diabetes
	2.2 Describe the signs and symptoms of diabetes
	2.3 Identify the risks of diabetes to foot health
	2.4 Explain the importance of footwear to foot health for individuals with diabetes
	2.5 Explain the impact of nutrition, health and physical exercise on an individual with diabetes
	2.6 Explain the treatment options for specific foot disorders often experienced by individuals with diabetes
3 Be able to discuss foot examination results with individuals/carers	3.1 Discuss the results of the foot examination with the individual/carer
	3.2 Discuss and agree arrangements for review with the individual/carer or the need for referral on for further tests
4 Be able to advise individuals/carers on the management of foot health	4.1 Discuss with the individual/carer the best options for managing foot health
	4.2 Provide written information on foot health to support the individual/carer
5 Be able to complete records	5.1 Update records in line with local policy and protocol



## Unit L/602/4489

### Transport, transfer and position individuals and equipment within the perioperative environment

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand the importance of health and safety measures when transporting, transferring and positioning individuals and equipment in the perioperative care environment	1.1 Explain the standard health and safety precautions used when moving, handling and transporting individuals and equipment and the potential consequences if these are not applied  1.2 Explain the safe techniques and procedures used for moving and positioning individuals and equipment in the perioperative environment, according to local and organisational policies and procedures  1.3 Explain the importance of using personal protective equipment  1.4 Identify situations when additional protective equipment may be required
2 Understand the requirements for pressure area care in the perioperative environment	2.1 Explain how to contribute to the maintenance of individuals' skin integrity in the perioperative environment  2.2 Explain how to use risk assessment documents for pressure area care during transfers and positioning  2.3 Explain the importance of using appropriate equipment to minimise the risk of tissue damage  2.4 Explain the importance of recording and reporting using the appropriate documents in line with local policies and protocols
3 Be able to prepare to transport individuals within the perioperative care environment	3.1 Identify the nature of the task required in discussion with the appropriate person/registered practitioner  3.2 Apply standard precautions for infection control

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- |   |     |   |
|---|-----|---|
|   | 3.3 | Implement health and safety measures relevant to transporting individuals within the perioperative care environment                               |
|   | 3.4 | Check that the transport equipment is clean, safe and functioning in line with local policies and protocols                                       |
|   | 3.5 | Report any potential hazards to the appropriate team member   |
|   | 3.6 | Identify the individual who needs to be moved   |
|   | 3.7 | Inform the individual of the nature and purpose of the transfer and the role of people involved   |
|   | 3.8 | Confirm that any required documents are available to accompany the individual   |
| 4 |     | Be able to assist in the transfer and positioning of individuals within the perioperative environment   |
|   | 4.1 | Use safe moving and handling techniques which minimise risk to all involved, including pain, friction and discomfort for those being moved        |
|   | 4.2 | Transfer and position individuals according to instructions, confirming they are positioned safely, comfortably and in accordance with guidelines |
|   | 4.3 | Maintain the privacy, dignity, safety, security and comfort of individuals while using equipment for transfer and positioning                     |
|   | 4.4 | Identify the effects of premedication and anaesthesia on the ability of individuals to move independently   |
|   | 4.5 | Use verbal and non-verbal skills to support individuals, closely observing and reporting any changes in condition to the appropriate team member  |

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- 4.6 Transfer the individual and their associated documentation over to the appropriate member of staff in the perioperative environment
- 4.7 Return equipment to the correct location in good working order

## Unit M/601/3467

### Understand Sensory Loss

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand the factors that impact on an individual with sensory loss	1.1 Analyse how a range of factors can impact on individuals with sensory loss  1.2 Analyse how societal attitudes and beliefs impact on individuals with sensory loss  1.3 Explore how a range of factors, societal attitudes and beliefs impact on service provision
2 Understand the importance of effective communication for individuals with sensory loss	2.1 Explain the methods of communication used by individuals with: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Sight loss</li> <li>• Hearing loss</li> <li>• Deafblindness</li> </ul> 2.2 Describe how the environment facilitates effective communication for people with sensory loss  2.3 Explain how effective communication may have a positive impact on lives on individuals with sensory loss
3 Understand the main causes and conditions of sensory loss	3.1 Identify the main causes of sensory loss  3.2 Define congenital sensory loss and acquired sensory loss  3.3 Identify the demographic factors that influence the incidence of sensory loss in the population
4 Know how to recognise when an individual may be experiencing sight and / or hearing loss and actions that may be taken	4.1 Identify the indicators and signs of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Sight loss</li> <li>• Hearing loss</li> <li>• Deafblindness</li> </ul> 4.2 Explain actions that should be taken if there are concerns about onset of

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:**

**Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

sensory loss or changes in sensory status

- 4.3 Identify sources of support for those who may be experiencing onset of sensory loss

## Unit M/601/5817

### Support families who are affected by Acquired Brain Injury

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand the impact on families who care for an individual who is in a minimally responsive or vegetative state	1.1 Explain the impact on family of caring for an individual in a minimally responsive or vegetative state
	1.2 Describe how theories of loss and grief provide a framework for practice
	1.3 Describe the long term adjustments families and friends may need to make
2 Understand the long term effects of acquired brain injury on family	2.1 Explain the emotional impact of acquired brain injury on families
	2.2 Compare the difference for families between caring for an individual with mild to moderate brain injury and an individual with severe brain injury
	2.3 Describe the socio-economic impact on the family of the long term effects of acquired brain injury
	2.4 Explain the impact on families of personality changes in the individual
	2.5 Describe changes that may occur in relationships as a result of acquired brain injury
3 Understand legislation that is relevant to carers of an individual effected by acquired brain injury	3.1 Identify legislation and policy specific to carers
	3.2 Explain the key principles within legislation and policy which are applicable to carers of an individual
	3.3 Outline the obligations on social care organisations as a result of legislation
4	4.1 Assess with primary carers the support they require

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
<p>Be able to assess the support required by families who hold the primary caring role</p>	<p>4.2 Agree with the primary carer a plan of support</p> <p>4.3 Identify support which can best be provided by others</p> <p>4.4 Report where there are unmet needs</p>
<p>5 Be able to work in partnership with other professionals and agencies</p>	<p>5.1 Explain the role of other professionals and agencies working with individuals with acquired brain injury</p> <p>5.2 Work in partnership with other professionals and agencies to support families</p> <p>5.3 Evaluate outcomes for families of partnership working</p>

## Unit M/601/7907

### Support individuals during a period of change

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
<p>1 Understand reasons for and responses to change</p>	<p>1.1 Describe types of change that may occur in the course of an individual's life</p> <p>1.2 Analyse factors that may make change a positive or a negative experience</p> <p>1.3 Describe approaches likely to enhance an individual's capacity to manage change and experience change positively</p>
<p>2 Be able to support individuals to plan how to manage or adapt to change</p>	<p>2.1 Work with individuals and others to identify recent or imminent changes affecting them</p> <p>2.2 Support the individual to assess the implications and likely impacts of the change identified</p> <p>2.3 Work with the individual and others to plan how to adapt to or manage the change</p> <p>2.4 Explain the importance of both practical support and emotional support during a time of change</p> <p>2.5 Identify and agree roles and responsibilities for supporting a change</p>
<p>3 Be able to support individuals to manage or adapt to change</p>	<p>3.1 Carry out agreed role and responsibilities for supporting change, in ways that promote active participation</p> <p>3.2 Provide information and advice to support the individual to manage change</p> <p>3.3 Support the individual to express preferences and anxieties when going through change</p> <p>3.4 Adapt support methods to take account of preferences or anxieties</p> <p>3.5 Describe how and when to seek additional expertise and advice when supporting an individual through change</p>

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:**

**Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- |   |  |     |   |
|---|--|-----|---|
| 4 | Be able to evaluate the support provided during a period of change | 4.1 | Agree with the individual and others how the support provided will be evaluated, and who will be involved       |
|   |  | 4.2 | Work with the individual and others to identify positive and negative aspects of a change                       |
|   |  | 4.3 | Work with the individual and others to evaluate the effectiveness of methods used to support the change process |
|   |  | 4.4 | Record and report on the effectiveness of support for the change process  |

## Unit M/602/1004

### Perform intravenous cannulation

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice which impact on own role	1.1 Summarise the current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice guidelines which affect own role in relation to performing intravenous cannulation  1.2 Explain the importance of working within own role and of seeking advice when faced with situations outside this role
2 Understand the purpose and functions of intravenous cannulation	2.1 Explain the anatomy and physiology of the circulatory system in relation to the insertion and maintenance of intravenous cannulae  2.2 Summarise the indications and reasons for intravenous cannulation  2.3 Explain the factors which influence the choice of cannulae and the site to be used  2.4 Explain the preparation and positioning of an individual for insertion of intravenous cannulae  2.5 Explain the risks associated with the insertion of intravenous cannulae  2.6 Evaluate current evidence based practice related to the management of risks associated with the insertion of intravenous cannulae
3 Be able to prepare to carry out intravenous cannulation	3.1 Implement health and safety measures relevant to the procedure and environment  3.2 Apply standard precautions for infection control  3.3 Confirm the individual's identity and gain valid consent  3.4 Communicate information in a way that is sensitive to the personal beliefs and preferences of the individual

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- |   |     |   |
|---|-----|---|
|   | 3.5 | Check that an individual's privacy and dignity is maintained at all times   |
|   | 3.6 | Prepare equipment for intravenous cannulation in line with local policy and protocol  |
|   | 3.7 | Assess and take relevant action for risks identified prior to and during the procedure  |
|   | 3.8 | Seek clinical advice and support when events or risks are beyond agreed level of competence   |
| 4 |     | Be able to carry out intravenous cannulation  |
|   | 4.1 | Prepare an appropriate site for cannulation, using the cannula of correct size and type   |
|   | 4.2 | Position and use a tourniquet to engorge the selected vein with blood   |
|   | 4.3 | Insert the cannula into the selected vein using the approved technique and confirm correct siting, positioning and patency of cannula |
|   | 4.4 | Apply an approved dressing to fix the cannula in position   |
|   | 4.5 | Flush the cannula when in situ according to local protocols and guidelines  |
|   | 4.6 | Attach and secure the correct giving set to where infusion is required following approved procedures                                  |
| 5 |     | Be able to monitor and report on the intravenous cannulation  |
|   | 5.1 | Report any condition or behaviour which may signify adverse reactions to the procedure, in line with local policy and protocol        |
|   | 5.2 | Report and record the cannulation procedure in accordance with agreed procedures  |
|   | 5.3 | Maintain the cannulation site at regular intervals to avoid infection and maintain access   |

## Unit M/602/2671

### Care for individuals with urethral catheters

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand current legislation national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice related to caring for individuals with urethral catheters	1.1 Summarise the current legislation national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice related to caring for individuals with urethral catheters  1.2 Explain own responsibilities and accountability in relation to current legislation, national guidelines, organisational policies and protocols which affect work practice when carrying out care activities
2 Understand the procedure of urethral catheterisation	2.1 Describe the anatomy and physiology of the male and female lower urinary tract  2.2 Describe lower urinary tract functions and continence status  2.3 Describe the causative factors which determine the need for urethral urinary catheters  2.4 Explain the effects of urethral catheterisation on an individual's comfort and dignity  2.5 Describe when to undertake urinalysis, obtain a catheter specimen of urine (CSU) or screen for multi resistant bacteria
3 Understand the use and application of catheter care equipment	3.1 .Describe catheter care equipment that can be used to meet individuals specific needs  3.2 Describe the types of catheter care advice to give to individuals  3.3 Describe the indications, mode of action, side-effects, cautions, contra indications and potential interactions of urethral catheter care  3.4 Describe the medication, antibiotics, anaesthetic agents and associated solutions used for individuals with urethral catheters

<b>Learning Outcome - The learner will:</b>		<b>Assessment Criterion - The learner can:</b>	
4	Be able to prepare individuals to carry out urethral catheters care	4.1	Confirm the individual's identity and gain valid consent
		4.2	Communicate accurate information in a way that is sensitive to the personal beliefs and preferences of the individual
		4.3	Agree the level of support required with the individual
		4.4	Apply standard precautions for infection prevention and control
		4.5	Apply health and safety measures relevant to the procedure and environment
		4.6	Carry out preparatory checks against the individual's care plan
5	Be able to carry out care for individuals with urethral catheters	5.1	Support the individual and relevant others to carry out catheter care in accordance with local policy and protocol
		5.2	Use catheter care equipment in line with manufacturers guidance; reporting any failure/malfunction in line with local policy and protocol
		5.3	Use and store equipment and materials in accordance with local policy and protocol
		5.4	Dispose of catheter related equipment in accordance with local policy and protocol
		5.5	Measure and record any urethral output within local policy and protocol
6	Be able to monitor and check individuals undergoing urethral catheter care	6.1	Monitor the individuals' condition for adverse effects and potential complications, taking appropriate action in line with local policy and protocol
		6.2	Observe and maintain cleanliness of the meatus

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- 6.3 Terminate the use of a urethral catheter in accordance with local policy and protocol
- 6.4 Record information in the ongoing catheter care records in line with local policy and protocol

**Unit M/602/2685****Conduct routine maintenance on clinical equipment****Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- |   |  |     |   |
|---|--|-----|---|
| 1 | Understand current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice related to conducting routine maintenance on clinical equipment | 1.1 | Summarise the current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice guidelines for conducting routine maintenance on clinical equipment |
| 2 | Understand the procedures involved in conducting routine maintenance on clinical equipment   | 2.1 | Describe the frequency of maintenance for clinical equipment in own scope of activity   |
|   |  | 2.2 | Explain the expected performance parameters, principles of operation, capabilities and limitations of the equipment   |
|   |  | 2.3 | Explain the requirements for routine preventative and/or first line corrective maintenance  |
|   |  | 2.4 | Explain the factors affecting decisions on maintenance activity   |
|   |  | 2.5 | Explain a fault and error message diagnosis and actions to take   |
|   |  | 2.6 | Explain the type and range of records required for maintenance of equipment   |
| 3 | Prepare to carry out routine maintenance on clinical equipment   | 3.1 | Prioritise action based on maintaining services   |
|   |  | 3.2 | Access relevant data from technical or supporting manuals to assist with routine maintenance  |

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
4 Carry out routine maintenance on clinical equipment	3.3 Apply standard precautions for infection control prior to maintenance
	3.4 Confirm equipment is correctly set up for preventive and/or first line corrective maintenance/fault diagnosis activities
	4.1 Notify any issues affecting the preventive and/or first line corrective maintenance and their impact on delivery of services to colleagues in line with local policy and protocol
	4.2 Assess decontamination status and requirements of the equipment to be maintained
	4.3 Conduct planned preventive and/or first line corrective maintenance in line with local policy and protocol.
	4.4 Check equipment is functioning against operational parameters to confirm operational status
5 Report and record on routine maintenance carried out on clinical equipment	4.5 Seek advice or support when preventive and/or first line corrective maintenance activity falls outside own level of expertise
	4.6 Dispose of waste materials in accordance with local policy and protocol
	5.1 Report any instances where the maintenance activities cannot be fully met or where there are identified defects outside the planned schedule
	5.2 Update/Maintain records in line with local policy and protocol

## Unit M/602/3125

### Assist and support individuals to use alternative and augmentative communication systems AAC

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice related to assisting and supporting individuals to use alternative and augmentative communication (AAC) systems	1.1 Summarise current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice guidelines for assisting and supporting individuals to use AAC systems  1.2 Explain own responsibilities and accountability in relation to local policies and protocols for AAC systems
2 Understand how to assist and support the use of AAC systems	2.1 Explain how AAC systems work  2.2 Explain how to deal with defects and problems to ensure functionality of equipment  2.3 Describe how to manage mobility issues in individuals using communication systems  2.4 Identify issues which may affect the physical comfort of individuals using communication systems
3 Understand how AAC systems support the needs of individuals	3.1 Describe how the use of AAC systems can support an individual with particular medical and physical conditions  3.2 Describe how the use of AAC systems affect interaction patterns  3.3 Compare the use of objects, signs, symbols, written and spoken language in communication systems

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
<p>4 Be able to prepare AAC equipment for individuals to use</p>	<p>3.4 Compare the cognitive and symbolic development and speech and language development of a group of individuals</p> <p>4.1 Establish the type of AAC system used by the individual prior to making contact with them</p> <p>4.2 Prepare resources and equipment safely, referring to the Speech and Language Therapist where necessary</p> <p>4.3 Set out equipment and furniture according to health and safety procedures and guidelines</p>
<p>5 Be able to assist and support individuals to use AAC systems</p>	<p>5.1 Gain valid consent from the individual, or a third party where the individual is not in a position to provide this consent independently</p> <p>5.2 Position the individual and self comfortably so that the individual can access the AAC system</p> <p>5.3 Support the individual's active participation in the communication process</p> <p>5.4 Use appropriate signs and symbols to communicate with the individual</p> <p>5.5 Use the AAC system in line with local policy and protocol to communicate with the individual</p> <p>5.6 Support others to communicate with individuals using AAC systems</p>



## Unit M/602/3934

### Measure and record individuals' body fluid balance in a perioperative environment

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand safe procedures relating to measuring and recording individuals' fluid balance in a perioperative environment	1.1 Describe the purposes of measuring an individual's fluid balance and wound drainage 1.2 Describe the factors that affect fluid input, output and wound drainage 1.3 Explain the potential hazards associated with measuring an individual's body fluids and wound drainage 1.4 Describe adverse circumstances related to measuring and recording an individual's fluid balance that would require immediate reporting 1.5 Describe organisational policies and procedures on correct disposal of single use equipment and other hazardous waste 1.6 Explain the organisational policies and procedures for reporting and recording faulty equipment 1.7 Explain why it is important to work within own sphere of competence
2 Be able to measure, record and review individuals' body fluid balance in a perioperative environment	2.1 Confirm the individual's identity and gain valid consent 2.2 Apply standard precautions for infection control 2.3 Implement health and safety measures relevant to recording an individual's body fluid balance when carrying out this task 2.4 Measure the individual's fluid input, output and wound drainage using equipment in line with local policy and protocol

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
	<p>2.5 Record the individual's body fluid balance in line with local policy and protocol</p> <p>2.6 Identify the difference between body fluid and other fluids</p> <p>2.7 Review fluid balance measurements in line with local policy and protocol</p> <p>2.8 Explain why it is necessary to report any problems in measuring or recording the individual's fluid balance in line with local policy and protocol</p> <p>2.9 Report results in line with local policy and protocol</p>
<p>3 Be able to manage equipment after measuring individuals' body fluid balance</p>	<p>3.1 Clean reusable equipment after use using the correct materials in line with local policy and protocols</p> <p>3.2 Return equipment to the storage or collection location</p>

## Unit M/602/4016

### Support parents/carers to interact with and care for their newborn baby

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice guidelines related to supporting parents/carers to interact with and care for their newborn baby	1.1 Summarise current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice guidelines related to supporting parents/carers to interact with and care for their newborn baby  1.2 Describe local policies for child safety and protection  1.3 Explain how to work in partnership with parents/carers and significant others  1.4 Explain the rights and responsibilities of parents/carers for their child and own role in relation to this  1.5 Explain how to obtain advice and information to support own practice  1.6 Explain how to report any concerns about the parent/carer or child's health, safety or wellbeing in line with local policy and protocol  1.7 Explain how to access records and information on the needs and preferences of babies, parents and carers, in line with local policy and protocol  1.8 Explain the importance of confidentiality when accessing records and information
2 Understand the importance of supporting parents/carers to interact and care for their newborn babies	2.1 Explain the responsibilities and limits of own relationship with parents/carers and their newborn baby  2.2 Describe the normal state of newborn babies

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
	<p>2.3 Explain how care and environmental conditions impact on the normal state of the newborn baby</p> <p>2.4 Explain why parents/carers should be encouraged to engage in active parenting</p> <p>2.5 Explain the importance of confirming the level of assistance required by parents/carers</p>
<p>3 Be able to support parents/carers in caring for, interacting with and forming bonds with their newborn babies</p>	<p>3.1 Provide active support to the parent/carer, within the level of assistance required, to handle and interact with the baby and deal with their needs</p> <p>3.2 Observe the parent/carer interacting with their baby, providing encouragement when they bond with and relate to their baby</p> <p>3.3 Discuss with parents/carers the ways in which they can meet the physical, social and emotional needs of their baby</p> <p>3.4 Reinforce advice that parents/carers have been given about handling and caring for their baby in ways that encourage interaction and bonding</p> <p>3.5 Update records about the progress of the parent/carer, reporting any concerns to the person with responsibility to act</p>
<p>4 Be able to support parents/carers in feeding and keeping their babies clean and safe</p>	<p>4.1 Encourage and support parents/carers to prepare themselves, the environment and the equipment prior to feeding, bathing or clothing the baby</p> <p>4.2 Discuss with parents/carers approaches to feeding in line with the advice they have been given and encourage regular feeding</p>

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- 4.3 Observe and support parents attending to their baby's comfort, hygiene and wellbeing needs when feeding, handling, washing, nappy changing and dressing
- 4.4 Encourage parents to monitor their baby's condition and observe any changes in behaviour, feeding or content of nappy, seeking support if required
- 4.5 Reinforce advice given to parents about sleeping positions, room and body temperature, coverings and clothing

## Unit M/602/4520

### Deliver training through demonstration and instruction

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand how to deliver training through demonstration and instruction	1.1 Identify key current national guidelines, policies or protocols relevant to the subject area in which the training is to be delivered  1.2 Describe the resources required to deliver the training  1.3 Describe what constitutes an appropriate environment for the delivery of the training  1.4 Explain how to overcome barriers that learners may encounter whilst undertaking training  1.5 Assess the use of demonstration and instruction as a teaching strategy  1.6 Explain the skills required for the effective delivery of demonstration and instruction as a teaching method
2 Be able to deliver training by demonstration and instruction	2.1 Explain the learning aims and objectives of the training session to the learners  2.2 Deliver the training programme to the learners through demonstration and instruction  2.3 Maintain communication with learners during demonstration and instruction  2.4 Check the learners' understanding at regular intervals  2.5 Encourage learners to ask questions and seek clarification during training  2.6 Provide learners with opportunities and support to demonstrate the learning achieved through the training  2.7 Respond to the learners' needs during the training

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:**

**Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

	2.8	Provide constructive feedback to learners on their progress
3	3.1	Gather feedback from learners on the effectiveness of the training
	3.2	Assess whether the training programme delivers the required learning outcomes
	3.3	Review the effectiveness of the training programme
	3.4	Identify ways to improve or adapt the training

## Unit R/601/1436

### Principles for implementing duty of care in health, social care or children's and young people's settings

Learning Outcome - The learner will:		Assessment Criterion - The learner can:	
1	Understand how duty of care contributes to safe practice	1.1	Explain what it means to have a duty of care in own work role
		1.2	Explain how duty of care contributes to the safeguarding or protection of individuals
2	Know how to address conflicts or dilemmas that may arise between an individual's rights and the duty of care	2.1	Describe potential conflicts or dilemmas that may arise between the duty of care and an individual's rights
		2.2	Describe how to manage risks associated with conflicts or dilemmas between an individual's rights and the duty of care
		2.3	Explain where to get additional support and advice about conflicts and dilemmas
3	Know how to respond to complaints	3.1	Describe how to respond to complaints
		3.2	Explain the main points of agreed procedures for handling complaints

## Unit R/601/1694 Promote Child and Young Person Development.

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
<p>1 Be able to assess the development needs of children or young people and prepare a development plan.</p>	<p>1.1 Explain the factors that need to be taken into account when assessing development.</p> <p>1.2 Assess a child or young person's development in the following areas</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Physical</li> <li>• Communication</li> <li>• Intellectual/ cognitive</li> <li>• Social, emotional and behavioural</li> <li>• Moral.</li> </ul> <p>1.3 Explain the selection of the assessment methods used.</p> <p>1.4 Develop a plan to meet the development needs of a child or young person in the work setting.</p>
<p>2 Be able to promote the development of children or young people.</p>	<p>2.1 Implement the development plan for a child or young person according to own role and responsibilities, taking into account that development is holistic and interconnected.</p> <p>2.2 Evaluate and revise the development plan in the light of implementation.</p> <p>2.3 Explain the importance of a person centred and inclusive approach and give examples of how this is implemented in own work.</p> <p>2.4 Listen to children or young people and communicate in a way that encourages them to feel valued.</p> <p>2.5 Encourage children or young people to actively participate in decisions affecting their</p>

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

<b>Learning Outcome - The learner will:</b>	<b>Assessment Criterion - The learner can:</b>
	lives and the services they receive according to their age and abilities.
3 Be able to support the provision of environments and services that promote the development of children or young people.	3.1 Explain the features of an environment or service that promotes the development of children and young people. 3.2 Demonstrate how own work environment or service is organised to promote the development of children or young people.
4 Understand how working practices can impact on the development of children and young people.	4.1 Explain how own working practice can affect children and young people's development. 4.2 Explain how institutions, agencies and services can affect children and young people's development.
5 Be able to support children and young people's positive behaviour.	5.1 Demonstrate how they work with children and young people to encourage positive behaviour. 5.2 Evaluate different approaches to supporting positive behaviour.
6 Be able to support children and young people experiencing transitions.	6.1 Explain how to support children and young people experiencing different types of transitions. 6.2 Demonstrate provision of structured opportunities for children or young people to explore the effects of transitions on their lives.

## Unit R/601/3526

### Develop and sustain effective working relationships with staff in other agencies

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand the context of working in partnership.	<p>1.1 Identify the nature, roles and functions, policies and procedures of principal agencies.</p> <p>1.2 Identify structures, function, and methods of communication and decision making.</p> <p>1.3 Identify the roles and responsibilities of key people who work in these agencies who are involved in joint working arrangements.</p> <p>1.4 Identify the effect agency structure and culture may have upon the policy and practice of joint working.</p> <p>1.5 Identify the effect of agency culture and structure upon policy and practice of working in partnership.</p> <p>1.6 Explain the principles and benefits of working in partnership.</p>
2 Develop effective working relationships with staff in other agencies	<p>2.1 Develop clear action plans for joint work which clarify roles and responsibilities of the respective parties.</p> <p>2.2 Reach agreements about roles and responsibilities and arrangements for decision making.</p> <p>2.3 Apply principles of equality, diversity and anti-discriminatory practice in working relationships with staff in other agencies.</p> <p>2.4 Confirm arrangements for joint work which are a) appropriate to the nature and purpose of the work b) likely to be effective in establishing and maintaining relationships c) respect confidentiality while balancing risks of sharing or not sharing information.</p> <p>2.5 Identify effective methods to monitor and review the progress of joint work.</p>

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:**

**Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- |   |     |  |
|---|-----|--|
|   | 2.6 | Obtain advice and support promptly when team discussion and supervision are appropriate.   |
|   | 2.7 | Complete records accurately and clearly and store them according to agency requirements.   |
|   | 2.8 | Communicate information to people who are authorised to have it.   |
| 3 |     | Sustain effective working relationships.   |
|   | 3.1 | Identify the benefits and advantages of joint working and use these to develop own practice.   |
|   | 3.2 | Identify factors which might hinder joint working.   |
|   | 3.3 | Explain methods of identifying and resolving conflict within and between agencies and between individuals.   |
|   | 3.4 | Demonstrate methods of assessing the effectiveness of joint working relationships.   |
|   | 3.5 | Explain and defend the views of your agency and its policies.  |
|   | 3.6 | Contribute to regular reviews of effectiveness and efficiency of joint working arrangements and identify ways in which the arrangements could be improved. |
|   | 3.7 | Complete records accurately and clearly and store them according to agency requirements.   |
|   | 3.8 | Communicate information to people who are authorised to have it.   |

## Unit R/601/8662

### Undertake physiological measurements

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand relevant legislation, policy and good practice for undertaking physiological measurements	1.1 Describe current legislation, national guidelines, organisational policies and protocols affecting work practice
2 Understand the physiological states that can be measured	2.1 Explain the principles of blood pressure to include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• blood pressure maintenance</li> <li>• differentiation between systolic and diastolic blood pressure</li> <li>• normal limits of blood pressure</li> <li>• conditions of high or low blood pressure</li> </ul> 2.2 Explain the principles of body temperature to include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• body temperature maintenance</li> <li>• normal body temperature</li> <li>• pyrexia, hyper-pyrexia and hypothermia</li> </ul> 2.3 Explain the principles of respiratory rates to include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• normal respiratory rates</li> <li>• factors affecting respiratory rates in ill and well individuals</li> </ul> 2.4 Explain the principles of pulse rates to include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• normal pulse rates limits</li> <li>• factors affecting pulse rates – raising or lowering</li> <li>• pulse sites on the body</li> <li>• the requirement for pulse oximetry measurements</li> <li>• analysis and implication of pulse oximetry findings</li> </ul> 2.5 Explain the principles of Body Mass Index (BMI) in relation to weight/dietary control

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
3 Be able to prepare to take physiological measurements	2.6 Explain the major factors that influence changes in physiological measurements
	2.7 Explain the importance of undertaking physiological measurements
	3.1 Explain to the individual what measurements will be undertaken and why these are done
	3.2 Reassure the individual during physiological measurements process
	3.3 Answer questions and deal with concerns during physiological measurements process
	3.4 Explain the help individuals may need before taking their physiological measurements
	3.5 Explain why it may be necessary to adjust an individual's clothing before undertaking physiological measurements
4 Be able to undertake physiological measurements	3.6 Ensure all materials and equipment to be used are appropriately prepared
	3.7 Confirm the individual's identity and obtain valid consent
	4.1 Apply standard precautions for infection prevention and control
	4.2 Apply health and safety measures relevant to the procedure and environment
	4.3 Select and use appropriate equipment at the prescribed time and in the prescribed sequence to obtain an accurate measurement
	4.4 Monitor the condition of the individual throughout the measurement
	4.5 Respond to any significant changes in the individual's condition

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
	<p>4.6 Follow the agreed process when unable to obtain or read a physiological measurement</p> <p>4.7 Identify any issues outside own responsibility and refer these to other colleagues</p>
<p>5 Be able to record and report results of physiological measurements</p>	<p>5.1 Explain the necessity for recording physiological measurements</p> <p>5.2 Explain a few common conditions which require recording of physiological measurements</p> <p>5.3 Demonstrate the correct process for reporting measurements that fall outside the normal levels</p> <p>5.4 Record physiological measurements taken accurately using the correct documentation</p>

## Unit R/602/2677

### Undertake stoma care

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand current legislation national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice related to assessment for stoma care	1.1 Summarise the current legislation national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice related to undertaking stoma care  1.2 Explain own responsibilities and accountability in relation to current legislation, national guidelines, organisational policies and protocols which affect work practice when carrying out stoma care
2 Understand the anatomy and physiology in relation to conditions requiring stoma care	2.1 Describe the reasons why a stoma may be fashioned  2.2 Describe the anatomy in relation to the position, reasons for and function of colostomies, ileostomies, ileal conduits and nephrostomy  2.3 Describe the potential consequences of contamination of stoma drainage systems  2.4 Describe the effects of diet and mobility on stoma function
3 Be able to prepare individuals for stoma care	3.1 Confirm the individual's identity and gain valid consent  3.2 Communicate information in a way that is sensitive to the personal beliefs and preferences of the individual  3.3 Carry out preparatory checks against the individual's care plan  3.4 Apply standard precautions for infection prevention and control

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:**

**Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

	3.5	Apply health and safety measures relevant to the procedure and environment
	3.6	Prepare equipment and materials for stoma care as prescribed/detailed in the individual's plan of care
4	Be able to carry out stoma care for individuals	
	4.1	Describe the factors which will affect the level of assistance required
	4.2	Agree the level of support required with the individual
	4.3	Demonstrate techniques to carry out stoma care in line with local policy and protocol
	4.4	Explain the action to take if the prepared stoma care equipment appears to be inappropriate or unsuitable
	4.5	Assist individuals to select and consume food and drink
	4.6	Assist individuals to take any medication prescribed to maintain effective stoma function
	4.7	Give individuals the opportunity to dispose of their own used stoma care equipment
	4.8	Give individuals the opportunity to maintain their personal hygiene
	4.9	Provide active support for individuals to manage their own stoma
	4.10	Dispose of equipment and soiled linen in line with local policy and protocol
5	5.1	Monitor the individual's condition throughout the stoma care

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:**

**Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

Be able to monitor and check individuals following stoma care	5.2	Check for any adverse effects and potential complications
	5.3	Monitor and report on the individual's pattern of stoma function, consistency of body waste and any changes that may have occurred
	5.4	Record the outcomes of stoma care activity in line with local policy and protocol
	5.5	Report findings to colleagues in line with local policy and protocol

## Unit R/602/2680

### Assure the effective functioning of radiographic image processing equipment

Learning Outcome - The learner will:		Assessment Criterion - The learner can:	
1	Understand the legislation, policy and good practice guidelines related to assuring the effective functioning of radiographic image processing equipment	1.1	Summarise the current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice guidelines for the functioning of radiographic image processing equipment
2	Understand the procedures and techniques involved in radiographic image processing equipment	2.1	Explain how to prepare and handle quality assurance equipment and materials
		2.2	Explain the optimum frequency of quality control tests on equipment
		2.3	Explain how to monitor radiographic image processing equipment and memory
		2.4	Explain how to maintain radiographic image processing equipment
3	Monitor the functioning of radiographic image processing equipment and environments	3.1	Prepare monitoring equipment and materials in line with health and safety guidance
		3.2	Use monitoring equipment and materials in line with health and safety guidance
		3.3	Obtain sufficient information to allow the quality and reliability of equipment and procedures to be accurately assessed
		3.4	Monitor the functioning of radiographic image processing equipment and environments in line with local policy and protocol
		3.5	Carry out any digital cleansing in line with local policy and procedures
4		4.1	Record the results of monitoring in line with local policy and procedures

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

Report on the functioning of radiographic image processing equipment

4.2 Describe how to investigate where any monitoring reveals actual or potential defects in equipment

4.3 Describe how to report results of any investigation into actual or potential defects in line with local policy and procedure

4.4 Store monitoring records in line with local policy and procedure

## Unit R/602/3926

### Operate equipment for intraoperative cell salvage blood collection

Learning Outcome - The learner will:		Assessment Criterion - The learner can:	
1	Understand current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice related to the operation of equipment for intraoperative cell salvage blood collection	1.1	1 Summarise the current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice guidelines which inform own practice in the operation of equipment for intraoperative cell salvage blood collection
2	Understand blood physiology related to intraoperative cell salvage	2.1	1 Outline the components of whole blood 2 Describe the functions of red blood cells in oxygen delivery 3 Explain the differences between salvaged red cells and whole blood
3	Understand the rationale for intraoperative cell salvage blood collection	3.1	1 Explain the rationale for using autologous blood transfusion 2 Outline the indications and contraindications for the use of intraoperative cell salvage blood collection 3 Explain the applications of intraoperative cell salvage blood collection with regard to those who refuse allogeneic blood on religious or other grounds 4 Explain when and for which individuals intraoperative cell salvage blood collection could be started
4	Understand the role and function of equipment used in intraoperative cell salvage blood collection	4.1	1 Explain the importance of labelling collection equipment with a unique individual identification 2 Explain the role of suction equipment in intraoperative cell salvage blood collection 3 Explain the rationale for setting a suitable vacuum level 4 Outline the effects of anticoagulant on salvaged blood 5 Explain the rationale for priming the collection equipment with anticoagulant 6 Describe the potential hazards and malfunctions of equipment and how to deal with them 7 Explain the dangers of reusing single use equipment

Learning Outcome - The learner will:		Assessment Criterion - The learner can:	
5	Understand the process and rationale of swab washing for intraoperative cell salvage blood collection	5.1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Outline the benefits and risks of swab washing</li> <li>2 Explain the rationale for weighing all swabs during intraoperative cell salvage blood collection</li> <li>3 Describe the process of salvaging blood from swabs</li> </ul>
6	Be able to prepare to operate equipment for intraoperative cell salvage blood collection	6.1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Apply standard precautions for infection control</li> <li>2 Implement health and safety measures in accordance with national and local policies and protocols</li> <li>3 Confirm the decision to collect blood with the appropriate person</li> <li>4 Label the collection reservoir with the individual's unique identification details in line with local policy and protocols</li> <li>5 Prime the collection equipment with anticoagulant solution according to the manufacturer's instructions</li> </ul>
7	Be able to collect intraoperative cell salvage blood	7.1	1 Use equipment to collect intraoperative cell salvage blood
		7.2	2 Monitor the volume of cell salvage blood, immediately reporting any problems to an appropriate person
		7.3	3 Regulate the required volume of anticoagulant in relation to blood loss
		7.4	4 Explain the importance of reporting problems/sudden increases in the rate of blood loss to the appropriate person
		7.5	5 Explain how to estimate blood loss during intraoperative cell salvage blood collection
		7.6	6 Report the estimated volume of cell salvage blood collected to the appropriate person
		7.7	7 Outline the possible contents of the collection reservoir during surgery

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- |      |   |
|------|---|
| 7.8  | 8 Outline the reasons for an expiry time for cell salvaged blood and how this is calculated |
| 7.9  | 9 Record the outcome of this activity in line with national/local policies and protocols    |
| 7.10 | 10 Dispose of waste in line with national/local policies and protocols                      |

## Unit R/602/3943

### Advise and inform individuals on managing their condition

Learning Outcome - The learner will:		Assessment Criterion - The learner can:	
1	Understand good practice in identifying information requirements	1.1	Summarise the current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice guidelines which inform own role in advising and informing individuals on how to manage their condition
		1.2	Explain the importance of identifying appropriate information to enable individuals to make informed lifestyle choices
		1.3	Explain how to recognise the information and advice an individual may require but be unable to express
		1.4	Explain the procedures for dealing with issues beyond own role, in accordance with local protocol
2	Understand health conditions	2.1	Describe the range of conditions encountered within the scope of own role
		2.2	Describe the effects of health conditions on individuals and their families
3	Understand the effects of change on individuals' lifestyles	3.1	Explain how change can be perceived by an individual and identify strategies for overcoming resistance to change
		3.2	Identify how adapting a lifestyle can empower an individual
		3.3	Describe the impact that empowering an individual to manage their own conditions has upon the individual, their family/carers and health services
4	Be able to ascertain the information and advice needs of individuals	4.1	Maintain the individual's privacy and dignity at all times
		4.2	Explain to the individual who you are and what your role is in providing confidential advice and information
		4.3	Access information about the individual's lifestyle
		4.4	Work with the individual to identify their information and advice requirements relating to their health condition

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:**

**Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- |   |     |   |
|---|-----|---|
|   | 4.5 | Review the range of local and national advice and information services  |
|   | 4.6 | Explain how to refer the individual to other sources of information and advice  |
| 5 |     | Be able to agree plans with individuals to adapt their lifestyle  |
|   | 5.1 | Explain to the individual the possible benefits of adapting their lifestyle while respecting their culture, needs and right to make their own decisions |
|   | 5.2 | Communicate information in a way that is sensitive to the personal beliefs and preferences of the individual  |
|   | 5.3 | Develop realistic plans and objectives with the individual to adapt their lifestyle   |
|   | 5.4 | Agree targets with the individual to optimise their health and well-being   |
|   | 5.5 | Discuss with the individual any concerns raised about adapting their lifestyle  |
|   | 5.6 | Agree dates to review the individual's progress   |

## Unit R/602/4008

### Assist others to monitor individuals' progress in managing dysphagia

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice guidelines related to monitoring individuals with dysphagia	1.1 Summarise current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice guidelines which affect own work practice related to monitoring individuals with dysphagia
2 Understand how to assist others in monitoring the progress of individuals with dysphagia	2.1 Explain the importance of regularly monitoring an individual's progress in managing dysphagia
	2.2 Explain how to assist others to monitor an individual's progress
	2.3 Explain the importance of monitoring an individual's progress in a constructive and encouraging manner
	2.4 Outline how to create an environment where open and confidential discussions with the individual can take place
	2.5 Explain the importance of the environmental conditions required by the individual
	2.6 Explain the importance of the support required by the individual
3 Know the action to take as a result of the monitoring undertaken	3.1 Outline the action to take if adverse issues and risks emerge
	3.2 Outline how and when information should be fed back and to whom
	3.3 Outline record keeping practices and procedures in relation to diagnostic and therapeutic programmes
4 Be able to assist others in monitoring individual's progress in managing dysphagia	4.1 Confirm the individual's identity and gain valid consent prior to carrying out the monitoring activity

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- |   |     |  |
|---|-----|--|
|   | 4.2 | Work with the individual and others to identify areas of progress and difficulty   |
|   | 4.3 | Assist others in recording information   |
|   | 4.4 | Assist others in setting goals with the individual   |
|   | 4.5 | Reinforce positive feedback and advice provided by others, regarding the individual's approach to managing their dysphagia                                     |
|   | 4.6 | Assist others to support the individual's active participation in managing their dysphagia   |
|   | 4.7 | Assist others to support the individual to increase their understanding of dysphagia   |
| 5 |     | Be able to report and record an individual's progress in managing their dysphagia  |
|   | 5.1 | Provide regular feedback on the individual's progress to the care team, alerting them immediately with any specific issues or risks that need urgent attention |
|   | 5.2 | Update records in line with local policy and protocol  |

## Unit R/602/4011

### Support carers to meet the care needs of individuals

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice related to supporting individuals in the community	1.1 Summarise current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice guidelines which influence practice related to supporting individuals in the community
2 Understand why some individuals may need to be supported	2.1 Identify the potential future pattern of disorders which may affect the lifestyle of individuals 2.2 Describe the potential effects of dysfunction on the lifestyle of individuals 2.3 Explain how increased dependence may affect individuals, carers and the provision of services
3 Understand how to ensure individuals receive the support they need from carers	3.1 Explain reasons for linking support with need 3.2 Explain the importance of establishing partnerships with carers 3.3 Describe reasons for assessing a carer's strengths and weaknesses with regard to supporting individuals 3.4 Describe the demands placed on a carer 3.5 Describe potential tensions between the demands placed on a carer and other commitments 3.6 Identify signs which would indicate potential problems with service delivery 3.7 Explain how to report concerns regarding the care of an individual
4 Be able to support carers to meet the care needs of individuals	4.1 Inform the carer of the individual's needs and care plan

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- 4.2 Discuss and agree the type of support needed by the carer for them to meet the individual's care needs
- 4.3 Make arrangements for the provision of resources necessary for the carer to support to individual
- 4.4 Provide the carer with information on how to contact the care team
- 4.5 Report any concerns about meeting the individual's care plan needs to an appropriate member of the care team
- 4.6 Update records related to service delivery agreements in line with local policy and protocol

## Unit T/600/9386

### Maintain pharmaceutical stock

Learning Outcome - The learner will:		Assessment Criterion - The learner can:	
1	Be able to maintain a safe storage environment	1.1	carry out checks of storage conditions, ensuring they are fit for purpose
		1.2	take the appropriate action in respect of problems with storage conditions
2	Be able to carry out stock checks	2.1	carry out stock checks, ensuring stock is fit for purpose
		2.2	rotate stock to reduce wastage
		2.3	check stock is available in sufficient formulations and quantity, including special orders
		2.4	reconcile details of stock checks as required
		2.5	describe the difference between branded and generic drugs
3	Be able to deal with stock related problems	3.1	take the appropriate action in respect of expired and damaged stock
		3.2	take the appropriate action in respect of over-stock
		3.3	promptly deal with any recalls or drug alerts, following agreed guidelines
		3.4	describe the importance of maintaining a safe storage environment
		3.5	describe own responsibilities in relation to current legislation and the maintenance of stock
4	Be able to comply with current legislation, policy, good practice, organisational and professional codes of practice and ethical standards	4.1	describe the importance of following SOPs related to maintaining stock
		4.2	comply with the health and safety requirements related to maintaining pharmaceutical stock and disposing of

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

		outdated, damaged or decontaminated stock
	4.3	understand the importance of good stock management, including the quantity of stock, taking account of seasonal variations
5	Be able to operate within the limitations of the job role	5.1 act within the limits of own authority when dealing with stock problems
		5.2 refer to appropriate person
		5.3 understand own responsibilities and current legislation that applies to maintaining pharmaceutical stock

## Unit T/601/3440

### Anatomy and Physiology for Maternity Support Workers

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Know the anatomy and physiology of the female reproductive system	1.1 Summarise the structure and function of the female reproductive system 1.2 Outline the role of hormones in female reproduction
2 Know the anatomy and physiology of the breast	2.1 Label the structure of the breast 2.2 Describe the process of lactation
3 Understand physical changes during pregnancy	3.1 Explain the physical changes in the body due to pregnancy 3.2 Analyse physical changes which pose a risk to pregnancy

## Unit T/601/3468

### Receive prescriptions from individuals

Learning Outcome - The learner will:		Assessment Criterion - The learner can:	
1	Ensure that the prescription declaration is complete	1.1	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. greet the individual politely, promptly, maintaining privacy and confidentiality throughout</li> <li>2. demonstrate how to deal with individuals with special needs</li> <li>3. check that the patient details are clear, correct and complete</li> <li>4. check that the patient declaration of the prescription has been completed</li> <li>5. examine evidence of exemption where appropriate</li> <li>6. state the different types of prescribers including the types of prescriptions used</li> <li>7. check that the prescription is legally valid</li> <li>8. issue a prescription receipt following local SOPs</li> </ol>
2	Complete financial transaction procedures	2.1	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. explain exemption and appropriate prescription charge requirements</li> <li>2. complete a financial transaction procedure.</li> </ol>
3	Provide the individual with relevant information	3.1	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. manage individual's expectations for waiting or collection times</li> <li>2. discuss potential product availability problems</li> <li>3. discuss alternative delivery services</li> <li>4. complete any required dispensary records</li> <li>5. forward prescription for validation and dispensing.</li> </ol>
4	Comply with current legislation, policy, good practice, organisational and professional codes of practice and ethical standards	4.1	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. explain current ethical and legal requirements that affect prescriptions, including relating to clinical trials</li> </ol>

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

5 Operate within the limitations of the job role

- 5.1
2. operate in accordance with the standard operating procedures (SOPs) at all times
  3. access relevant national and local guidelines and policies and procedures.
  1. work within the scope of responsibility and practice
  2. understand the limitations of your scope of practice and when to refer to an appropriate person.

## Unit T/601/5317

### Understand how to support individuals with autistic spectrum conditions

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand the main characteristics of autistic spectrum conditions	<p>1.1 Explain why it is important to recognise that each person on the autistic spectrum has their own individual abilities, needs, strengths, gifts and interests</p> <p>1.2 Analyse the main diagnostic features of autistic spectrum conditions, commonly known as the “triad of impairments”</p> <p>1.3 Explain the meanings of the term ‘spectrum’ in relation to autism by reference to the notions of sub-conditions and individual variation within the autistic spectrum</p> <p>1.4 Describe the sensory and perceptual difficulties commonly experienced by individuals with an autistic spectrum condition</p> <p>1.5 Describe other conditions that may be associated with the autistic spectrum</p> <p>1.6 Describe how language and intellectual abilities vary between individuals and sub-groups across the spectrum</p>
2 Understand how autistic spectrum conditions can impact on the lives of individuals and those around them	<p>2.1 Describe ways in which autism can impact on the everyday lives of individuals, their parents/carers and siblings, and others close to them</p> <p>2.2 Explain how autistic spectrum conditions can impact on individuals differently according to factors such as their gender, ethnicity and social, cultural and religious environment</p> <p>2.3 Explain how stereotyped views, discrimination and a lack of understanding of autistic spectrum conditions can compound the difficulties already experienced by individuals and their families</p>

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:**

**Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

	2.4	Describe ways of helping an individual and/or their parent/carer/siblings/partner to understand their autistic spectrum condition
3	Understand different theories and concepts about autism	<p>3.1 Explain theories about autism related to</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• brain function and genetics</li><li>• psychology</li></ul> <p>3.2 Explain why there are alternative choices of terminology used to describe the autism spectrum</p> <p>3.3 Describe the strengths and limitations of different types of terminology</p> <p>3.4 Explain the contributions of autism rights groups and the implications of their views for the support of individuals with an autistic spectrum condition</p> <p>3.5 Outline controversies concerning the search for cures and interventions for autistic spectrum conditions and for pre-natal diagnosis</p> <p>3.6 Explain why it is important to take into account individual differences in views of what is important in life, and how this might be especially important when supporting individuals on the autistic spectrum</p>
4	Understand the legal and policy framework that underpins good practice in the support of individuals with autistic spectrum conditions	<p>4.1 Identify what legislation and national and local policy and guidance exists</p> <p>4.2 Explain what individuals or situations the legislation, national and local policy and guidance applies to</p> <p>4.3 Explain how the ways in which legislation and national and local policy and guidance apply to individuals on the autistic spectrum may differ according to their particular needs</p>
5	Understand how to achieve effective communication with	<p>5.1 Give examples of how “challenging behaviour” can be a way of expressing emotions where there are communication differences</p>

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

individuals with an autistic spectrum condition	5.2	Describe methods and systems used to develop and support an individual's communication
	5.3	Explain how to maximise the effectiveness of communication by making adaptations to own verbal and non-verbal communication style
6 Understand how to support individuals with an autistic spectrum condition	6.1	Explain why it is important to establish a person-centred plan catering to an individual's specific preferences and needs
	6.2	Explain why consultation with families/parents/carers is important in person-centred planning and support
	6.3	Describe different techniques and approaches to support individuals with an autistic spectrum condition to learn and develop new skills
	6.4	Explain how to reduce sensory overload, or increase sensory stimulation, by making adaptations to the physical and sensory environment
	6.5	Explain ways of helping an individual with an autistic spectrum condition to protect themselves from harm
	6.6	Explain how needs change for individuals and their families at different stages of their lives
	6.7	Describe the role that advocacy can play in the support of individuals with an autistic spectrum condition

## Unit T/601/8282

### Support Individuals with Specific Communication Needs

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand specific communication needs and factors affecting them	1.1 Explain the importance of meeting an individual's communication needs 1.2 Explain how own role and practice can impact on communication with an individual who has specific communication needs 1.3 Analyse features of the environment that may help or hinder communication 1.4 Analyse reasons why an individual may use a form of communication that is not based on a formal language system 1.5 Identify a range of communication methods and aids to support individuals to communicate 1.6 Describe the potential effects on an individual of having unmet communication needs
2 Be able to contribute to establishing the nature of specific communication needs of individuals and ways to address them	2.1 Work in partnership with the individual and others to identify the individual's specific communication needs 2.2 Contribute to identifying the communication methods or aids that will best suit the individual 2.3 Explain how and when to access information and support about identifying and addressing specific communication needs
3 Be able to interact with individuals using their preferred communication	3.1 Prepare the environment to facilitate communication 3.2 Use agreed methods of communication to interact with the individual

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
	<p>3.3 Monitor the individual's responses during and after the interaction to check the effectiveness of communication</p> <p>3.4 Adapt own practice to improve communication with the individual</p>
<p>4 Be able to promote communication between individuals and others</p>	<p>4.1 Support the individual to develop communication methods that will help them to understand others and be understood by them</p> <p>4.2 Provide opportunities for the individual to communicate with others</p> <p>4.3 Support others to understand and interpret the individual's communication</p> <p>4.4 Support others to be understood by the individual by use of agreed communication methods</p>
<p>5 Know how to support the use of communication technology and aids</p>	<p>5.1 Identify specialist services relating to communication technology and aids</p> <p>5.2 Describe types of support that an individual may need in order to use communication technology and aids</p> <p>5.3 Explain the importance of ensuring that communication equipment is correctly set up and working properly</p>
<p>6 Be able to review an individual's communication needs and the support provided to address them</p>	<p>6.1 Collate information about an individual's communication and the support provided</p> <p>6.2 Contribute to evaluating the effectiveness of agreed methods of communication and support provided</p> <p>6.3 Work with others to identify ways to support the continued development of communication</p>

## Unit T/601/8850

### Obtain and test capillary blood samples

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand how legislation, policy and good practice guidelines relate to obtaining and testing capillary blood samples.	1.1 Describe current legislation, national guidelines, local policies, protocols and good practice guidelines which relate to obtaining and testing capillary blood samples.
2 Understand the anatomy and physiology in relation to obtaining and testing capillary blood samples.	2.1 Describe the structure and purpose of capillary blood vessels.
	2.2 Explain blood clotting processes and the factors that influence blood clotting.
3 Be able to prepare to obtain capillary blood samples.	3.1 Confirm the individual's identity and obtain valid consent.
	3.2 Select and prepare an appropriate site for obtaining the sample taking into account the individual's preferences.
	3.3 Provide support and reassurance to address the individual's needs and concerns.
	3.4 Communicate accurate information in a way that is sensitive to the individual's personal beliefs and preferences.
4 Be able to obtain capillary blood samples.	4.1 Apply health and safety measures relevant to the procedure and environment.
	4.2 Apply standard precautions for infection prevention and control.
	4.3 Describe the different reasons for obtaining capillary blood samples.
	4.4 Obtain blood samples of the required volume and quantity causing minimal discomfort to the individual.
	4.5 Use the selected materials, equipment and containers/slides in accordance with agreed procedures.

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- |   |      |   |
|---|------|---|
|   | 4.6  | Obtain blood samples in the correct sequence when obtaining multiple samples.   |
|   | 4.7  | Ensure stimulation of blood flow.   |
|   | 4.8  | Select alternative sites where necessary.   |
|   | 4.9  | Carry out the correct procedure for encouraging closure and blood clotting at the site.   |
|   | 4.10 | Respond to any indication of an adverse reaction, complication or problem during the procedure.   |
|   | 4.11 | Demonstrate correct labelling, packaging, transportation, storage and use of appropriate attached documentation in relation to blood samples, to include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• legibility of labelling and documentation</li><li>• temperature control of storage</li><li>• immediacy of transportation.</li></ul> |
|   | 4.12 | Explain the actions to be taken if complications and problems occur during the collection of capillary blood samples, including contra-indications.   |
| 5 |      | Be able to test and record the results of blood samples.  |
|   | 5.1  | Test the sample using the approved method in line with organisational procedure.  |
|   | 5.2  | Describe normal or expected results for particular tests.   |
|   | 5.3  | Recognise and interpret normal, expected and abnormal results.  |
|   | 5.4  | Ensure that results are passed on to an appropriate staff member for interpretation as required.  |
|   | 5.5  | Record results fully and accurately and forward according to local requirements.  |

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- |   |  |     |   |
|---|--|-----|---|
| 6 | Be able to pass on the results of blood samples. | 6.1 | Communicate the results of the tests and any further action required to the individual. |
|   |  | 6.2 | Respond to questions and concerns from individuals, providing accurate information.     |
|   |  | 6.3 | Refer issues outside own responsibility to an appropriate staff member.                 |

## Unit T/601/9495

### Support individuals at the end of life

Learning Outcome - The learner will:		Assessment Criterion - The learner can:	
1	Understand the requirements of legislation and agreed ways of working to protect the rights of individuals at the end of life	1.1	Outline legal requirements and agreed ways of working designed to protect the rights of individuals in end of life care
		1.2	Explain how legislation designed to protect the rights of individuals in end of life care applies to own job role
2	Understand factors affecting end of life care	2.1	Outline key points of theories about the emotional and psychological processes that individuals and key people may experience with the approach of death
		2.2	Explain how the beliefs, religion and culture of individuals and key people influence end of life care
		2.3	Explain why key people may have a distinctive role in an individual's end of life care
		2.4	Explain why support for an individual's health and well-being may not always relate to their terminal condition
3	Understand advance care planning in relation to end of life care	3.1	Describe the benefits to an individual of having as much control as possible over their end of life care
		3.2	Explain the purpose of advance care planning in relation to end of life care
		3.3	Describe own role in supporting and recording decisions about advance care planning
		3.4	Outline ethical and legal issues that may arise in relation to advance care planning
4	Be able to provide support to individuals and key people during end of life care	4.1	Support the individual and key people to explore their thoughts and feelings about death and dying

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
	<p>4.2 Provide support for the individual and key people that respects their beliefs, religion and culture</p> <p>4.3 Demonstrate ways to help the individual feel respected and valued throughout the end of life period</p> <p>4.4 Provide information to the individual and/or key people about the individual's illness and the support available</p> <p>4.5 Give examples of how an individual's well-being can be enhanced by:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• environmental factors</li> <li>• non-medical interventions</li> <li>• use of equipment and aids</li> <li>• alternative therapies</li> </ul> <p>4.6 Contribute to partnership working with key people to support the individual's well-being</p>
<p>5 Understand how to address sensitive issues in relation to end of life care</p>	<p>5.1 Explain the importance of recording significant conversations during end of life care</p> <p>5.2 Explain factors that influence who should give significant news to an individual or key people</p> <p>5.3 Describe conflicts and legal or ethical issues that may arise in relation to death, dying or end of life care</p> <p>5.4 Analyse ways to address such conflicts</p>
<p>6 Understand the role of organisations and support services available to individuals and key people in relation to end of life care</p>	<p>6.1 Describe the role of support organisations and specialist services that may contribute to end of life care</p> <p>6.2 Analyse the role and value of an advocate in relation to end of life care</p>

Learning Outcome - The learner will:		Assessment Criterion - The learner can:	
		6.3	Explain how to establish when an advocate may be beneficial
		6.4	Explain why support for spiritual needs may be especially important at the end of life
		6.5	Describe a range of sources of support to address spiritual needs
7	Be able to access support for the individual or key people from the wider team	7.1	Identify when support would best be offered by other members of the team
		7.2	Liaise with other members of the team to provide identified support for the individual or key people
8	Be able to support individuals through the process of dying	8.1	Carry out own role in an individual's care
		8.2	Contribute to addressing any distress experienced by the individual promptly and in agreed ways
		8.3	Adapt support to reflect the individual's changing needs or responses
		8.4	Assess when an individual and key people need to be alone
9	Be able to take action following the death of individuals	9.1	Explain why it is important to know about an individual's wishes for their after-death care
		9.2	Carry out actions immediately following a death that respect the individual's wishes and follow agreed ways of working
		9.3	Describe ways to support key people immediately following an individual's death
10		10.1	Identify ways to manage own feelings in relation to an individual's dying or death

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

Be able to manage own feelings in relation to the dying or death of individuals

10.2

Utilise support systems to deal with own feelings in relation to an individual's dying or death

## Unit T/602/0968

### Contribute to effective multidisciplinary team working

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand the workings of the multidisciplinary team	1.1 Describe roles and responsibilities within the multidisciplinary team
	1.2 Explain the contribution that different professions can make to the evaluation and planning of patient care
	1.3 Summarise the communication structures in own organisation
2 Be able to participate in multidisciplinary team working	2.1 Identify examples of good and poor practice and make suggestions for improvements to team practice
	2.2 Clarify any team issues and the views of colleagues
	2.3 Provide examples of ways to address issues within the group positively and constructively
	2.4 Record any issues in the team that cannot be resolved, passing this information on to someone who has the authority and capability to reach a solution
	2.5 Identify development needs against the demands of the work role and requirements of the team
3 Be able to communicate effectively when working in a multidisciplinary team	3.1 Provide information on work in progress to enable the team to effectively carry out their work
	3.2 Provide colleagues with help and advice when requested and when this is consistent with other responsibilities
	3.3 Explain how to adapt communication styles in ways which are appropriate to different people
	3.4 Maintain confidentiality of information relating to other members of the team



## Unit T/602/2686

### Analyse and present health related data and information

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice related to the analysis and presentation of health related data and information	1.1 Summarise the current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice guidelines for the analysis and presentation of health related data and information
	1.2 Describe the health and business context for data and information requirements
	1.3 Explain the importance of the quality of data and information in a health context
2 Prepare to analyse data and information and present outputs in a health context	2.1 Describe tools and techniques data and information
	2.2 Assess the available tools and techniques for their relevance and applicability to the work being carried out
	2.3 Select tools and techniques paying attention to the quality of the data and information available
	2.4 Determine the resources required to apply the selected tools and techniques
	2.5 Record the rationale for the selection of tools and techniques
3 Carry out analysis of data and information	3.1 Check conformity with information governance in line with local policy and protocol
	3.2 Analyse the data and information using the selected tools and techniques
	3.3 Identify and highlight any anomalies and limitations in the data analysis or information
	3.4 Summarise and draw justifiable conclusions from the analysis

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
<p>4 Review and present outputs of the analysis</p>	<p>4.1 Inform the appropriate person(s) where there are any implications that require decision-making</p> <p>4.2 Clarify any assumptions made and degrees of uncertainty in the data and information</p> <p>4.3 Record changes to the source data and information in line with local policy and protocol</p> <p>4.4 Select a presentation method that is appropriate to the data and information and audience</p> <p>4.5 Present the outputs of the analysis in line with local policy and protocol</p>

## Unit T/602/3093

### Remove wound drains

Learning Outcome - The learner will:		Assessment Criterion - The learner can:	
1	Understand current legislation, policy and good practice related to removing wound drains	1.1	Summarise the current legislation, national guidelines and local policies and protocols which affect own role
		1.2	Identify the procedures relating to removing wound drains
		1.3	Explain when good practice suggests it may be necessary to seek assistance
2	Understand factors related to the removal of wound drains	2.1	Describe the anatomy and physiology of the skin and underlying structures
		2.2	Identify the types, purpose and function of materials and equipment required in relation to removing wound drains
		2.3	Summarise the methods and techniques for preparing and applying dressings and wound supports
		2.4	Explain how to measure the individual's wound drainage prior to removal as directed by an appropriate person
		2.5	Explain the hazards associated with measuring wound drainage and removing wound drains
3	Be able to prepare to remove wound drains	3.1	Select relevant equipment and check that it is fit for purpose
		3.2	Prepare the drainage system in accordance with local policies and procedures and manufacturer's guidance
4	Be able to remove wound drains	4.1	Apply health and safety measures relevant to removing wound drains
		4.2	Apply standard precautions for infection control

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- |   |     |   |
|---|-----|---|
|   | 4.3 | Confirm the individual's identity and obtain valid consent  |
|   | 4.4 | Communicate accurate information in a way that is sensitive to the personal beliefs and preferences of the individual |
|   | 4.5 | Carry out wound drain removal in accordance with local policy and protocol  |
|   | 4.6 | Dispose of used wound drainage systems and equipment according to local policy and protocol                           |
| 5 |     | Be able to care for and support the individual during and after the procedure   |
|   | 5.1 | Reassure the individual throughout the activity   |
|   | 5.2 | Identify potential adverse reactions and discomfort and describe the action to be taken                               |
|   | 5.3 | Observe the drainage site for signs of leakage and apply the relevant dressing  |
|   | 5.4 | Record and report outcomes of the activity in line with local policy and protocol                                     |

## Unit T/602/3126

### Develop activities and materials to enable individuals to reach specific communication goals

Learning Outcome - The learner will:		Assessment Criterion - The learner can:	
1	Know the normal patterns of learning and communication development of individuals	1.1	Describe normal developmental patterns of visual and auditory perception
		1.2	Describe normal patterns of processing with regard to stimuli, at different stages of development and functioning
2	Understand how speech and language disorders can affect an individual's learning, communication development and lifestyle	2.1	Describe the factors which can affect developmental patterns
		2.2	Describe common causes of speech and language disorders
		2.3	Explain how the potential future patterns of disorders can affect the lifestyle of individuals
		2.4	Explain how various factors can affect an individual's ability to learn, sustain concentration, access and use materials and equipment and process information
3	Understand how therapy programmes can enable individuals to achieve communication goals	3.1	Explain the purpose of different types of speech and language therapy
		3.2	Explain how therapy programmes can be adapted, within set boundaries, to increase their effectiveness
		3.3	Explain how to break the therapy programme down into manageable goals for the individual
		3.4	Identify the factors which must be considered when designing activities and materials for different individuals
4	Be able to develop activities and materials for therapy programmes based on the identified communication goals of individuals	4.1	Work with others to identify and agree the communication goals of an individual, seeking advice from the speech and language therapist when necessary

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- 4.2 Establish a hierarchy of necessary tasks and skills needed by the individual in order to meet communication goals
- 4.3 Use information sources to identify the individual's needs, abilities and interests
- 4.4 Select therapeutic techniques which can be applied to the needs of the individual
- 4.5 Develop activities and materials for therapy programmes for the individual based on their needs, abilities, interests and communication goals
- 4.6 Develop activities and materials that enable active participation in group therapy

## Unit T/602/3949

### Operate equipment for intraoperative cell salvage blood processing and complete intraoperative cell salvage blood process

Learning Outcome - The learner will:		Assessment Criterion - The learner can:	
1	Understand current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice related to operating equipment for intraoperative cell salvage blood processing and completing the intraoperative cell salvage blood process	1.1	1 Summarise the current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice guidelines which inform own practice in the operation of equipment for processing and completing the intraoperative cell salvage blood process
2	Understand blood physiology in relation to processing intraoperative cell salvaged blood	2.1	Outline the components of whole blood
		2.2	Describe the functions of red blood cells in oxygen delivery
		2.3	Outline the effects of citrate or heparin anticoagulant on salvaged blood
		2.4	Explain the differences between salvaged red cells and whole blood
		2.5	Outline the basis of centrifugal separation
3	Understand the rationale for using intraoperative cell salvage	3.1	Outline the indications and contraindications for the use of intraoperative cell salvage
		3.2	Explain the rationale for using autologous blood transfusion
		3.3	Explain the applications of intraoperative cell salvage with regard to those who refuse allogeneic blood on religious or other grounds
4	Understand the process and rationale for swab washing in relation to intraoperative cell salvage	4.1	Outline the benefits and risks of swab washing during intraoperative cell salvage
		4.2	Explain the rationale for weighing all swabs during intraoperative cell salvage

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
5 Understand the role and function of equipment used in intraoperative cell salvage	<p>4.3 Outline how blood is salvaged from swabs</p> <p>5.1 Outline the types and functions of intraoperative cell salvage machines used in own work practice</p> <p>5.2 Explain the rationale informing the choice of machine programmes for intraoperative cell salvage machines used in own work practice&lt;br&gt;</p> <p>5.3 Explain the purpose of the collection and processing set equipment&lt;br&gt;</p> <p>5.4 Describe the potential hazards and malfunctions of equipment and how to deal with them&lt;br&gt;</p> <p>5.5 Outline the dangers of reusing single use equipment</p> <p>5.6 Explain the limits of their own role in operating and monitoring equipment for processing salvaged blood</p>
6 Understand the reinfusion process	<p>6.1 Describe how reinfusion bags should be labelled</p> <p>6.2 Outline the potential contents of the reinfusion bag</p> <p>6.3 Outline the types of filters used to reinfuse intraoperative cell salvage blood and their limitations</p>
7 Be able to prepare to operate equipment intraoperative cell salvage blood processing	<p>7.1 Implement health and safety measures relevant to preparing to operate equipment intraoperative cell salvage blood processing</p> <p>7.2 Apply standard precautions for infection control&lt;br&gt;</p> <p>7.3 Outline the factors which inform the decision to process the reservoir contents&lt;br&gt;</p>

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
	7.4 Confirm the decision to process intraoperative cell salvage blood with the appropriate person
	7.5 Use normal intravenous saline 0.9% wash fluid and explain the factors which inform the choice of wash fluid
	7.6 Explain the importance of using the required wash volume
8 Be able to operate equipment for processing intraoperative cell salvage blood and complete intraoperative cell salvage blood process	8.1 Monitor the progress of intraoperative cell salvage blood processing, reporting any problems to the appropriate person in line with local policy and protocol
	8.2 Record the volume of processed intraoperative cell salvage blood for reinfusion
	8.3 Report completion of the process to the appropriate person
	8.4 Outline how to estimate blood loss during intraoperative cell salvage
	8.5 Outline the reasons for an expiry time for intraoperative cell salvaged blood and define how this is calculated
	8.6 Label salvaged blood reinfusion bags in line with national/local policy
	8.7 Keep the intraoperative cell salvaged blood reinfusion bags with the patient at all times
	8.8 Dispose of waste in line with national/local policy and protocol
	8.9 Explain the principles of waste disposal in relation to equipment

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- 8.10 Explain the importance of documenting the amount of anticoagulant used
- 8.11 Complete required documentation in line with national/local policy and protocol

## Unit T/602/4017

### Support parents/carers and those in a parental role to care for babies during their first year

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
<p>1 Understand current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice guidelines related to supporting parents/carers to care for babies</p>	<p>1.1 Summarise current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice guidelines related to supporting parents/carers to care for babies</p> <p>1.2 Describe local policies for child safety and protection</p> <p>1.3 Explain how to work in partnership with parents/carers and significant others</p> <p>1.4 Explain the rights and responsibilities of parents/carers for their child and own role in relation to this</p> <p>1.5 Explain how to obtain advice and information to support own practice</p> <p>1.6 Explain how to report any concerns about the parent/carer or child's health, safety or wellbeing in line with local policy and protocol</p> <p>1.7 Explain how to access records and information on the needs and preferences of babies, parents and carers, in line with local policy and protocol</p> <p>1.8 Explain the importance of confidentiality when accessing records and information</p>
<p>2 Understand how to support the physical, social, emotional and cognitive development of babies during their first year</p>	<p>2.1 Outline the expected indicators of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Physical development</li><li>• Pre-speech development and verbal/non-verbal behaviour and cues</li><li>• Language and communication development</li><li>• Social and emotional development</li></ul> <p>for babies during their first year</p>

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
	<p>2.2 Explain what parents/carers can do to encourage development</p> <p>2.3 Explain the importance of play to overall development and the role of adults and other children in encouraging this</p> <p>2.4 Describe the impact of factors that can affect the health, wellbeing, behaviour, skills, abilities and development of parents/carers and their children</p> <p>2.5 Explain how the personal beliefs, previous experiences and preferences of parents/carers may impact on the ways in which they care for their child</p>
<p>3 Be able to provide active support to parents/carers in relation to keeping their babies safe</p>	<p>3.1 Involve parents/carers in identifying their requirements in meeting the rights and protection needs of their baby</p> <p>3.2 Explain to parents/carers the importance of only leaving the baby with people who are capable of caring for children</p> <p>3.3 Support parents/carers to follow safety measures when handling their baby</p> <p>3.4 Provide encouragement, guidance and support to parents/carers in relation to keeping their baby safe, secure and free from danger as the baby becomes mobile</p> <p>3.5 Explain how active parenting can benefit the baby</p>
<p>4 Be able to provide active support to parents/carers to look after the health needs of their babies</p>	<p>4.1 Support parents/carers to prepare themselves, the environment and the baby for bathing</p> <p>4.2 Support parents/carers to maintain their baby's comfort, health and wellbeing during handling, washing, nappy changing and dressing</p>

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- |   |     |  |
|---|-----|--|
|   | 4.3 | Support parents/carers to monitor their baby's condition for signs of discomfort and distress  |
|   | 4.4 | Explain to parents/carers how to take action in response to signs of discomfort and distress from their baby, including the need to seek immediate attention in case of an emergency |
|   | 4.5 | Reinforce advice given to parents/carers about sleeping positions, room and body temperature, coverings and clothing   |
|   | 4.6 | Encourage parents/carers to seek advice and support about any aspects of their baby's care   |
|   | 4.7 | Support parents/carers to make informed choices when their baby persistently cries   |
| 5 |     | Be able to provide active support to parents/carers in meeting the developmental needs of their babies   |
|   | 5.1 | Discuss with parents/carers the physical, social, emotional and developmental needs of their baby during the first year, including the importance of language development            |
|   | 5.2 | Support parents/carers to interact and play with their baby using play materials that promote each aspect of their developmental capabilities  |
|   | 5.3 | Update records on the parents/carers progress in line with local policy and protocol, referring any concerns to an appropriate person  |

## Unit T/602/4325

### Obtain a client history

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
<p>1 Understand current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice related to obtaining a client history</p>	<p>1.1</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Identify own roles and responsibilities with regard to the current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice guidelines when obtaining an individual's history</li> <li>2 Explain the guidelines to be followed if the individual is unable to provide a relevant history</li> <li>3 Explain how to check a third party's authority and ability to provide information about an individual</li> <li>4 Outline the steps to be taken to clarify and confirm any missing or ambiguous information in an individual's history</li> </ol>
<p>2 Be able to prepare to obtain a client history</p>	<p>2.1</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Confirm the individual's identity</li> <li>2 Explain own role and responsibilities</li> <li>3 Check the individual's or third party's understanding of the purpose of the activity</li> </ol>
<p>3 Be able to obtain a client history</p>	<p>3.1</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Gain valid consent to share information in line with national/local policy and protocol</li> <li>2 Maintain confidentiality and the individual's dignity, privacy, beliefs and rights in line with local policy and protocol</li> <li>3 Obtain information on the individual's prior health and circumstances</li> <li>4 Clarify any ambiguous or incomplete statements</li> <li>5 Respond to any questions from the individual or third party</li> <li>6 Record the outcomes of the activity in line with national/local policy and protocol</li> </ol>

## Unit T/602/4521

### Manage the availability of physical resources to meet service delivery needs in a health setting

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand how to manage the availability and use of physical resources in a health setting	1.1 Describe legal and organisational requirements for selecting suppliers 1.2 Explain the need for confidentiality in the use of physical resources 1.3 Identify links between work activities and the supplies needed 1.4 Describe methods of monitoring supplies to ensure quality and quantity 1.5 Explain why team members should be empowered to take responsibility for their own use of physical resources 1.6 Discuss the corrective action to take when experiencing problems with obtaining supplies 1.7 Describe ways of agreeing amendments to orders when resource needs cannot be fully met
2 Know factors which may have an effect on use of resources in a health setting	2.1 Describe the potential impact of resource usage on the environment 2.2 Describe legal and organisational requirements for minimising the impact resources usage has on the environment 2.3 Describe organisational requirements for controlling resource usage
3 Be able to manage the availability and use of physical resources to meet service delivery needs	3.1 Identify specific physical resources to meet service delivery needs 3.2 Select a supplier/s in line with local policy and protocol 3.3 Negotiate with a supplier/s in a way that maintains good relations with them

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- 3.4 Order physical resources to meet service delivery needs, agreeing amendments to the order if resources cannot be obtained in full
- 3.5 Monitor the use of resources at appropriate intervals in line with local policy and protocol

## Unit Y/501/0598

### Administer medication to individuals, and monitor the effects

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand legislation, policy and procedures relevant to administration of medication	1.1 Identify current legislation, guidelines policies and protocols relevant to the administration of medication
2 Know about common types of medication and their use	2.1 Describe common types of medication including their effects and potential side effects
	2.2 Identify medication which demands the measurement of specific physiological measurements
	2.3 Describe the common adverse reactions to medication, how each can be recognised and the appropriate action(s) required
	2.4 Explain the different routes of medicine administration
3 Understand procedures and techniques for the administration of medication	3.1 Explain the types, purpose and function of materials and equipment needed for the administration of medication via the different routes
	3.2 Identify the required information from prescriptions / medication administration charts
4 Prepare for the administration of medication	4.1 Apply standard precautions for infection control
	4.2 Explain the appropriate timing of medication e.g. check that the individual has not taken any medication recently
	4.3 Obtain the individuals consent and offer information, support and reassurance throughout, in a manner which encourages their co-operation and which is appropriate to their needs and concerns
	4.4 Select, check and prepare correctly the medication according to the medication administration record or medication information leaflet

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:**

**Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- |   |  |     |   |
|---|--|-----|---|
| 5 | Administer and monitor individuals' medication | 5.1 | Select the route for the administration of medication, according to the patient's plan of care and the drug to be administered, and prepare the site if necessary |
|   |  | 5.2 | Safely administer the medication<br>(a) in line with legislation and local policies<br>(b) in a way which minimises pain, discomfort and trauma to the individual |
|   |  | 5.3 | Describe how to report any immediate problems with the administration   |
|   |  | 5.4 | Monitor the individual's condition throughout, recognise any adverse effects and take the appropriate action without delay  |
|   |  | 5.5 | Explain why it may be necessary to confirm that the individual actually takes the medication and does not pass the medication to others                           |
|   |  | 5.6 | Maintain the security of medication and related records throughout the process and return them to the correct place for storage                                   |
|   |  | 5.7 | Describe how to dispose of out of date and part-used medications in accordance with legal and organisational requirements   |

## Unit Y/600/9395

### Undertake an in-process accuracy check of assembled prescribed items prior to the final accuracy check

Learning Outcome - The learner will:		Assessment Criterion - The learner can:	
1	Be able to confirm the prescription is suitable for dispensing	1.1	ensure that the prescription has been clinically screened and confirmed as suitable to dispense
		1.2	check with the appropriate person to confirm that the prescription is valid
2	Be able to check dispensed items	2.1	check the correct item has been selected and is fit for purpose
		2.2	check the correct strength, form and quantity of medicines have been dispensed
		2.3	check the label against the prescription and ensure the contents and directions match the prescribed items
		2.4	check that the assembled items are fit for purpose and appropriately packaged
		2.5	check that appropriate devices and sundry items are included
		2.6	check future supply arrangements are made when sufficient stock is not available
		2.7	annotate and endorse the prescription or documentation
3	Be able to resolve dispensing errors and near misses	3.1	identify any dispensing errors
		3.2	rectify dispensing errors
		3.3	record dispensing errors
		3.4	understand the causes and consequences of near misses and dispensing errors

Learning Outcome - The learner will:		Assessment Criterion - The learner can:	
4	Be able to confirm an in-process accuracy check	4.1	pass the dispensed prescription on for a final accuracy check once the in-process accuracy check has been confirmed
5	Be able to comply with current legislation, policy, good practice, organisational and professional codes of practice and ethical standards	5.1	demonstrate working in accordance with the Standard Operating Procedures at all times
		5.2	demonstrate compliance with legal, professional and organisational requirements, guidelines and confidentiality at all times
		5.3	apply knowledge of the types of medicines and supply
		5.4	apply knowledge of common proprietary and generic names
		5.5	apply knowledge of how medicines are administered
		5.6	explain when and why Patient Medication Records (PMRs) are used
		5.7	explain the importance of maintaining dispensary records
6	Be able to operate within the limitations of the job role	6.1	explain the limits of own authority
		6.2	report any problems to the appropriate person

## Unit Y/601/1437

# Promote equality and inclusion in health, social care or children's and young people's settings

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand the importance of diversity, equality and inclusion	1.1 Explain what is meant by <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Diversity</li><li>• Equality</li><li>• Inclusion</li></ul> 1.2 Describe the potential effects of discrimination1.3 Explain how inclusive practice promotes equality and supports diversity
2 Be able to work in an inclusive way	2.1 Explain how legislation and codes of practice relating to equality, diversity and discrimination apply to own work role2.2 Show interaction with individuals that respects their beliefs, culture, values and preferences
3 Be able to promote diversity, equality and inclusion	3.1 Demonstrate actions that model inclusive practice3.2 Demonstrate how to support others to promote equality and rights3.3 Describe how to challenge discrimination in a way that promotes change

## Unit Y/601/6167

### Understand the impact of Acquired Brain Injury on individuals

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand Acquired Brain Injury	1.1 Define Acquired Brain Injury
	1.2 Describe possible causes of Acquired Brain Injury
	1.3 Explain the difference between a Traumatic Brain Injury and other forms of Acquired Brain Injury
	1.4 Describe brain injuries that are <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• mild</li><li>• moderate</li><li>• severe</li></ul>
2 Understand the impact on individuals of Acquired Brain Injury	2.1 Discuss initial effects of Acquired Brain Injury on the individual
	2.2 Explain the long term effects of Acquired Brain Injury to include <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• physical</li><li>• functional</li><li>• cognitive</li><li>• behavioural effects</li></ul>
	2.3 Explain the concepts of loss in relation to Acquired Brain Injury for individuals and carers
3 Understand the specialist communication needs of an individual with Acquired Brain Injury	3.1 Define dysphasia and dysarthria
	3.2 Explain the effects of dysphasia and dysarthria on communication
	3.3 Compare the different techniques required to support an individual with dysphasia and dysarthria
	3.4 Evaluate different intervention strategies and assistive tools that support communication

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
<p>4 Understand the impact that personality changes can have on an individual and those providing support</p>	<p>4.1 Explain the impact of personality changes on the individual</p> <p>4.2 Explain the impact of personality changes on those caring for the individual</p> <p>4.3 Explain how lack of self-awareness/insight may affect the individual</p> <p>4.4 Explain the skills needed to support the individual and family/carers to come to terms with personality changes</p>
<p>5 Understand the impact of challenging behaviour</p>	<p>5.1 Explain behaviours which are considered challenging</p> <p>5.2 Analyse the importance of own attitudes, values and skills when supporting an individual to manage their behaviour</p> <p>5.3 Explain measures that should be taken to manage the risk from challenging behaviour</p> <p>5.4 Explain the process for reporting and referring challenging behaviour</p>

## Unit Y/601/7903

### Support individuals to live at home

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand the principles of supporting individuals to live at home	1.1 Describe how being supported to live at home can benefit an individual  1.2 Compare the roles of people and agencies who may be needed to support an individual to live at home  1.3 Explain the importance of providing information about benefits, allowances and financial planning which could support individuals to live at home  1.4 Explain how risk management contributes to supporting individuals to live at home
2 Be able to contribute to planning support for living at home	2.1 Identify with an individual the strengths, skills and existing networks they have that could support them to live at home  2.2 Identify with an individual their needs that may require additional support and their preferences for how the needs may be met  2.3 Agree with the individual and others the risks that need to be managed in living at home and ways to address them
3 Be able to work with individuals to secure additional services and facilities to enable them to live at home	3.1 Support the individual and others to access and understand information about resources, services and facilities available to support the individual to live at home  3.2 Work with the individual and others to select resources, facilities and services that will meet the individual's needs and minimise risks  3.3 Contribute to completing paperwork to apply for required resources, facilities and services, in a way that promotes active participation

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:**

**Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- |   |  |  |
|---|--|--|
|   | 3.4  | Obtain permission to provide additional information about the individual in order to secure resources, services and facilities |
| 4 | Be able to work in partnership to introduce additional services for individuals living at home | 4.1 Agree roles and responsibilities for introducing additional support for an individual to live at home                      |
|   | 4.2  | Introduce the individual to new resources, services, facilities or support groups  |
|   | 4.3  | Record and report on the outcomes of additional support measures in required ways  |
| 5 | Be able to contribute to reviewing support for living at home                                  | 5.1 Work with the individual and others to agree methods and timescales for on-going review                                    |
|   | 5.2  | Identify any changes in an individual's circumstances that may indicate a need to adjust the type or level of support          |
|   | 5.3  | Work with the individual and others to agree revisions to the support provided   |

## Unit Y/601/8145

### Promote person centred approaches in health and social care

Learning Outcome - The learner will:		Assessment Criterion - The learner can:	
1	Understand the application of person centred approaches in health and social care	1.1	Explain how and why person-centred values must influence all aspects of health and social care work
		1.2	Evaluate the use of care plans in applying person centred values
2	Be able to work in a person-centred way	2.1	Work with an individual and others to find out the individual's history, preferences, wishes and needs
		2.2	Demonstrate ways to put person centred values into practice in a complex or sensitive situation
		2.3	Adapt actions and approaches in response to an individual's changing needs or preferences
3	Be able to establish consent when providing care or support	3.1	Analyse factors that influence the capacity of an individual to express consent
		3.2	Establish consent for an activity or action
		3.3	Explain what steps to take if consent cannot be readily established
4	Be able to implement and promote active participation	4.1	Describe different ways of applying active participation to meet individual needs
		4.2	Work with an individual and others to agree how active participation will be implemented
		4.3	Demonstrate how active participation can address the holistic needs of an individual
		4.4	Demonstrate ways to promote understanding and use of active participation
5	Be able to support the individual's right to make choices	5.1	Support an individual to make informed choices

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
	<p>5.2 Use own role and authority to support the individual's right to make choices</p> <p>5.3 Manage risk in a way that maintains the individual's right to make choices</p> <p>5.4 Describe how to support an individual to question or challenge decisions concerning them that are made by others</p>
<p>6 Be able to promote individuals well-being</p>	<p>6.1 Explain the links between identity, self-image and self esteem</p> <p>6.2 Analyse factors that contribute to the well-being of individuals</p> <p>6.3 Support an individual in a way that promotes their sense of identity, self-image and self esteem</p> <p>6.4 Demonstrate ways to contribute to an environment that promotes well-being</p>
<p>7 Understand the role of risk assessment in enabling a person centred approach</p>	<p>7.1 Compare different uses of risk assessment in health and social care</p> <p>7.2 Explain how risk-taking and risk assessment relate to rights and responsibilities</p> <p>7.3 Explain why risk assessments need to be regularly revised</p>

## Unit Y/601/8825

### Interact with and support individuals using telecommunications

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand the legal and local requirements relating to the use of telecommunications when supporting individuals	1.1 Describe the legal and local requirements and policies relevant to the functions being carried out 1.2 Explain the rights of the individual being supported using telecommunications
2 Be able to use telecommunication technology	2.1 Use different types of telecommunication technology 2.2 Explain how interactions may differ depending on the type of telecommunication technology used 2.3 Respond to individuals according to organisational policies 2.4 Record details of interactions in the appropriate system
3 Be able to engage with individuals using telecommunications	3.1 Engage with the individual without face to face interaction including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• providing opportunities to sustain the interaction</li><li>• providing reassurance of continued interest</li><li>• encouraging individuals to share their concerns</li><li>• responding to the individual's immediate requirements at each stage during the interaction</li><li>• recognising where anonymity may encourage them to respond</li></ul> 3.2 Provide information about the service and confirm its appropriateness to the individual 3.3 Identify the significance of the circumstances the individual is in

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
	<p>3.4 Encourage callers to provide additional information about their situation or requirements</p> <p>3.5 Maintain the confidentiality of the individual, self, and colleagues according to the procedures of the service</p> <p>3.6 Comply with legal and organisational requirements and policies relevant to the functions being carried out</p>
<p>4 Be able to identify and evaluate any risks or dangers for individuals during the interaction</p>	<p>4.1 Identify the types of risks or dangers different individuals might face</p> <p>4.2 Evaluate the implications of any risk or dangers facing an individual, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• the circumstances in which the interaction is being made</li> <li>• the types of problems which could occur</li> <li>• the significance of any signs of increased stress during interactions</li> <li>• whether there are any constraints on individuals</li> <li>• the appropriate action to deal with any risks, dangers or problems</li> </ul>
<p>5 Be able to terminate the interaction</p>	<p>5.1 Demonstrate how to end interactions including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• identifying when to close the interaction</li> <li>• providing clear information to the individual on the reasons for ending the interaction</li> <li>• operating to the guidelines and procedures of the organisation</li> <li>• explaining what further action may be taken</li> </ul> <p>5.2 Identify situations where it would be dangerous or disadvantageous to the interest of the individual to terminate the interaction</p>

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- 5.3 Record and check the individual's demographic details
- 5.4 Identify why recording and checking details might be required before ending/transferring the call

## Unit Y/601/9022

### Undertake tissue viability risk assessments

Learning Outcome - The learner will:		Assessment Criterion - The learner can:	
1	Understand the need for tissue viability risk assessment	1.1	Describe the anatomy and physiology of healthy skin
		1.2	Describe the changes that occur when damage caused by pressure develops
		1.3	Explain when an initial tissue viability risk assessment may be required
		1.4	Describe what to look for when assessing the skin
		1.5	Describe pre-disposing factors which may exacerbate risk of impaired tissue viability and skin breakdown
		1.6	Describe external factors, including shearing forces, which may exacerbate risk of impaired tissue viability and skin breakdown
2	Be able to undertake tissue viability risk assessment	2.1	Identify individuals who may be at risk of impaired tissue viability and skin breakdown
		2.2	Apply standard precautions for infection prevention and control
		2.3	Inspect the general condition of an individual's skin
		2.4	Identify the sites where pressure damage might occur using appropriate assessment tools
		2.5	Complete a tissue viability risk assessment within an appropriate time scale, as determined by organisational policy
		2.6	Use safe handling techniques when assisting the individual to move during the assessment
		2.7	Encourage the active participation of the individual and others where possible and appropriate
3		3.1	Complete tissue viability risk assessment documentation

<b>Learning Outcome - The learner will:</b>		<b>Assessment Criterion - The learner can:</b>	
	Be able to record and report on tissue viability risk assessment	3.2	Share findings with appropriate staff and the individual
		3.3	Notify appropriate staff of any immediate concerns
4	Understand when the risk assessment should be reviewed	4.1	Explain why the tissue viability risk assessment should be regularly reviewed and repeated
		4.2	Explain when the tissue viability assessment tool, or the current review cycle may no longer be appropriate due to changes in the individual's condition or environment

## Unit Y/602/0963

### Manufacture equipment or medical devices for individuals within healthcare

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice related to manufacture of medical devices	1.1 Summarise the current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice guidelines for the manufacture of equipment or medical devices
	1.2 Explain how the prescription requirement is integrated in the manufacture of equipment or medical devices
	1.3 Describe how to assess and manage risks within the manufacturing environment and for the item under construction
2 Prepare to carry out the manufacturing of equipment or medical devices	2.1 Identify and assess existing manufacturing components for suitability
	2.2 Select the materials, tools and techniques for producing the equipment or device
	2.3 Interpret the specification for the manufacture of the equipment or device
	2.4 Determine those aspects of specification which relate to an adaptation of existing equipment and/or device to meet the prescribed customised solution
3 Carry out the manufacturing of equipment or medical devices	3.1 Work with stakeholders and others involved in the manufacture process
	3.2 Implement health and safety measures relevant to the manufacturing of equipment or medical devices
	3.3 Manufacture and assemble the component parts to the agreed specification
4 Monitor operations and conditions	4.1 Maintain environmental conditions as required by the manufacturing procedure

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
	<p>4.2 Carry out the testing, monitoring, inspection and risk assessment for the operation of equipment and materials</p> <p>4.3 Respond to any faults or breakdowns to equipment in line with local policy and protocol</p>
<p>5 Test and adjust the finished equipment or medical device</p>	<p>5.1 Confirm that the product meets agreed specification, prescription and performance parameters</p> <p>5.2 Apply standard precautions for infection control</p> <p>5.3 Test the product with the individual</p> <p>5.4 Adapt the product to meet the customised solution</p> <p>5.5 Compile and maintain records and user information for the equipment or medical device in line with local policy and protocol</p> <p>5.6 Store records in line with local policy and protocol</p>

## Unit Y/602/3099

### Provide support for individuals with communication and interaction difficulties

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice related to supporting individuals with communication and interaction difficulties	1.1 1 Summarise the current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice guidelines which inform own role
2 Understand roles and responsibilities of those supporting individuals with communication and interaction difficulties	2.1 1 Describe the roles and responsibilities of others within own work environment 2 Describe the roles and responsibilities of others external to own work environment
3 Understand normal and impaired communication	3.1 1 Explain the differences between normal communication and that of individuals with communication disorders 2 Identify the role of communication in developing self-esteem and expression 3 Describe how emotional and physical factors can affect communication and how these may be minimised or overcome 4 Explain the relationship between: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• sensory deficit</li><li>• delayed language acquisition</li><li>• cognitive development</li></ul> 5 Describe the communication impairments and disorders encountered in own role and the effects these have on social interaction and learning
4 Understand methods of interacting with individuals with communication difficulties	4.1 1 Explain how to adapt vocabulary to meet the needs of individuals with communication difficulties 2 Describe visual and auditory teaching approaches 3 Explain the importance of recognising how different cultures, upbringing and home circumstances can affect communication

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

<b>Learning Outcome - The learner will:</b>	<b>Assessment Criterion - The learner can:</b>
5 Be able to support individuals with communication and interaction difficulties to carry out learning tasks and activities	4 Explain the use of educational/behaviour Support plans  5.1 1 Describe the language and communication needs of an individual encountered in own work role 2 Obtain information about the individual's competence in communication and the therapist's planned learning tasks and activities 3 Organise the environment and equipment to facilitate participation in planned learning tasks and activities 4 Use modes of communication to encourage and assist the individual to participate in learning tasks and activities 5 Assist the individual to use augmented and alternative means of communication
6 Be able to support individuals with communication and interaction difficulties to communicate with others	6.1 1 Encourage the individual to converse with relevant others 2 Provide opportunities for the individual to initiate, respond and maintain communication and relationships with relevant others 3 Encourage and support relevant others to respond to the individual with communication and interaction difficulties 4 Promote the individual's autonomy with regard to expressive and receptive language 5 Provide constructive feedback to the individual on their participation and progress 6 Provide feedback to the therapist on significant aspects of the individual's participation levels and progress

## Unit Y/602/3121

### Monitor individuals' progress in relation to managing their body weight and nutrition

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand how to monitor individuals' progress in relation to managing their weight and nutrition in line with current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice guidelines	1.1 . Explain how to develop weight and nutritional management plans in line with current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice guidelines  1.2 . Outline the types of information to gather from an individual in order to assess their progress  1.3 . Explain how to provide constructive feedback and encouragement to an individual regarding their progress in line with policy and protocol  1.4 . Explain how to interpret body measurements to inform the type of support provided in line with policy and protocol  1.5 . Explain when to refer the individual to other practitioners for modifications of plans
2 Be able to monitor individuals' progress in managing their body weight	2.1 Prepare an environment which is suitable for open and confidential discussions and for taking body measurements  2.2 Confirm the individual's identity and gain valid consent prior to taking body measurements  2.3 Take the individuals' body measurements in line with local policy and protocol  2.4 Interpret body measurements to inform the type of advice to give

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
	<p>2.5 Discuss, with the individual/carer, the progress they have made and any difficulties they have experienced</p> <p>2.6 Support the individual to identify factors which have adversely affected their plan</p> <p>2.7 Evaluate the effectiveness of current interventions in achieving agreed goals</p>
<p>3 Be able to support individuals in re-establishing goals for further progress</p>	<p>3.1 Agree new goals with the individual/carer</p> <p>3.2 Agree review dates with the individual/carer</p> <p>3.3 Provide encouragement to the individual by reinforcing the benefits of adhering to a weight management plan</p> <p>3.4 Update records in line with local policy and protocol</p>

## Unit Y/602/3197

### Assist in implementing treatment programmes for individuals with severely reduced movement/mobility

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice which inform own role in assisting in treatment programmes for individuals with severely reduced movement/mobility	1.1 1 Summarise the current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice guidelines which inform own role
2 Understand anatomical and physiological issues related to providing treatment programmes for individuals with severely reduced movement/mobility	2.1 1 Describe the aspects of the anatomy and physiology of the skin and lungs which inform treatment programmes for individuals with severely reduced movement/mobility 2 Explain the principles of 24-hour posture management and pressure area care 3 Describe the physiological benefits of movement 4 Describe the basic reaction to pain within the body
3 Understand treatment programmes for individuals with severely reduced movement/mobility	3.1 1 Describe the types and purpose of treatment programmes used for different conditions. 2 Identify potential adverse reactions to different treatment programmes, 3 Explain the actions to be taken when adverse reactions occur and the potential consequences of not taking action 4 Explain the rationale for and importance of monitoring an individual's condition 5 Identify the functions of equipment and materials used in different treatment programmes 6 Identify the potential dangers associated with <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• treatment programmes for individuals with severely reduced movement/mobility</li><li>• the equipment and the materials used</li></ul>

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- 4 Be able to implement treatment programmes for individuals with severely reduced movement/mobility

- 4.1
- 1 Position the individual appropriately for the treatment programme
  - 2 Obtain valid consent
  - 3 Carry out activities specified in the individual's treatment plan
  - 4 Monitor the individual's condition during and after treatment
  - 5 Provide verbal and physical support and encouragement during and after treatment
  - 6 Give feedback to the practitioner on the progress of the treatment programme in line with local policy or protocol
  - 7 Explain the importance of seeking advice and assistance on problems beyond own scope of competence
  - 8 Make records of the treatment in line with national/local policy and protocol

## Unit Y/602/3930

### Assist in the delivery of perioperative care and support to individuals

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand the potential effects of the perioperative environment and procedures on individuals undergoing perioperative care	1.1 Explain the effects of pre-medication and sedation on the individual and how these affect support and monitoring requirements 1.2 Explain the importance of ensuring the environment is suitable for the conscious /unconscious individual 1.3 Identify factors in the perioperative environment and procedures which could cause stress and distress to the individual 1.4 Describe the signs of distress which may be exhibited by the individual in the perioperative environment and how these affect support requirements
2 Be able to support individuals in a perioperative environment according to their care plan	2.1 Use verbal and non-verbal communication to support the individual's comfort, privacy, dignity, emotional and physical care needs according to their care plan 2.2 Communicate information in a way that is sensitive to the personal beliefs and preferences of the individual 2.3 Respond to the individual's questions, referring on those outside own sphere of competence in accordance with local policy and protocol 2.4 Provide support and care to the patient to promote their comfort in the perioperative environment
3 Be able to monitor individuals in a perioperative environment according to the requirements of their care plans	3.1 Explain the importance of closely monitoring the individual in the perioperative environment 3.2 Identify any changes in and concerns about the individual's condition

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- 3.3 Seek advice about changes in and concerns about the individual's condition in line with local policy and protocol
- 3.4 Record outcomes of monitoring activities in line with local policy and protocol
- 3.5 Obtain and pass on relevant information on the individual's care requirements to other team members in line with local policy and protocol

## Unit Y/602/4009

### Examine the feet of individuals with diabetes

Learning Outcome - The learner will:		Assessment Criterion - The learner can:	
1	Understand good practice in diabetic foot care	1.1	Summarise national and local guidelines on diabetes healthcare
		1.2	Describe local referral pathways for foot health
		1.3	Explain how to gather necessary information from the individual prior to conducting an examination
		1.4	Explain how to inform the individual/carer about the relationship between diabetes and foot health
		1.5	Explain how to work in partnership with individuals/carers
2	Understand the factors affecting foot health in individuals with diabetes	2.1	Explain the causes of diabetes
		2.2	Describe the signs and symptoms of diabetes
		2.3	Identify the risks of diabetes to foot health
		2.4	Explain the importance of footwear to foot health for individuals with diabetes
		2.5	Explain the impact of nutrition, health and physical exercise on an individual with diabetes
3	Be able to prepare to conduct an examination on the feet of individuals who have diabetes	3.1	Confirm the individual's identity and gain valid consent prior to beginning the examination
		3.2	Gather information about the individual's general health, including any relevant symptoms
		3.3	Explain the procedures used for examining foot health and identifying risks to foot health linked to diabetes
4		4.1	Apply health and safety measures relevant to the procedure and environment

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:**

**Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

	4.2	Apply standard precautions for infection control
	4.3	Explain the foot examination process to the individual
	4.4	Select the equipment used to examine foot health
	4.5	Use tools to assess for peripheral sensory neuropathy
	4.6	Palpate pedal pulses to assess for peripheral vascular disease
	4.7	Check feet for gross deformities, trauma, current infection and ulcerations
	4.8	Examine the individual's footwear to assess suitability and risk status
	4.9	Advise the individual/carer about how diabetes can affect foot health
	4.10	Assess factors which may limit an individual's ability to self-care
5	5.1	Record outcomes of activities in line with local policy and protocol, seeking advice for any concerns identified
	5.2	Obtain and pass on relevant information on individual's care requirements to other team members in line with local policy and protocol
		Be able to conduct an examination on the feet of an individual with diabetes
		Be able to report the outcome of foot examinations

## Unit F/502/1224

### Communicate with individuals about promoting their health and wellbeing while working as a Health Trainer

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Analyse concepts of health and wellbeing	1.1 Explain the terms 'health and wellbeing'
	1.2 Define the term 'lifestyle'
	1.3 Explain the links between lifestyle and health and wellbeing
2 Understand factors influencing health and wellbeing	2.1 Identify the factors influencing individuals' health and wellbeing
	2.2 Identify wider determinants of health and wellbeing
	2.3 Understand and communicate key Health Promotion messages and the benefits of making lifestyle changes
	2.4 Identify other people and agencies who might be able to help individuals to improve their health and wellbeing
3 Encourage individuals to address issues relating to their health and wellbeing	3.1 Raise individual's awareness of the key issues relating to their health and wellbeing
	3.2 Describe a range of approaches that apply to promoting health and wellbeing
	3.3 Use a range of methods for providing information on health and wellbeing
	3.4 Help individuals identify factors affecting their health and wellbeing
	3.5 Explore individuals' knowledge and beliefs about health and wellbeing
	3.6 Encourage individuals to take responsibility for changing their behaviour
	3.7 Help individuals to get hold of reliable and up to date information and advice

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
4 Communicate appropriately with individuals	3.8 Help individuals access appropriate support
	4.1 Select and use ways to communicate appropriately with individuals
	4.2 Encourage an open and frank exchange of views
	4.3 Identify barriers to communication
	4.4 Use appropriate methods to reduce barriers to communications
	4.5 Acknowledge individuals' right to make their own decisions
	4.6 Support individuals to make their own decisions

## Unit Y/601/1695

# Understand How to Safeguard the Wellbeing of Children and Young People.

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand the main legislation, guidelines, policies and procedures for safeguarding children and young people.	1.1 Outline current legislation, guidelines, policies and procedures within own UK Home Nation affecting the safeguarding of children and young people.
	1.2 Explain child protection within the wider concept of safeguarding children and young people.
	1.3 Analyse how national and local guidelines, policies and procedures for safeguarding affect day to day work with children and young people.
	1.4 Explain when and why inquiries and serious case reviews are required and how the sharing of the findings informs practice.
	1.5 Explain how the processes used by own work setting or service comply with legislation that covers data protection, information handling and sharing.
2 Understand the importance of working in partnership with other organisations to safeguard children and young people.	2.1 Explain the importance of safeguarding children and young people.
	2.2 Explain the importance of a child or young person centred approach.
	2.3 Explain what is meant by partnership working in the context of safeguarding.
	2.4 Describe the roles and responsibilities of the different organisations that may be involved when a child or young person has been abused or harmed.
3 Understand the importance of ensuring children and young	3.1 Explain why it is important to ensure children and young people are protected from harm within the work setting.

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
<p>people's safety and protection in the work setting.</p>	<p>3.2 Explain policies and procedures that are in place to protect children and young people and adults who work with them.</p> <p>3.3 Evaluate ways in which concerns about poor practice can be reported whilst ensuring that whistleblowers and those whose practice or behaviour is being questioned are protected.</p> <p>3.4 Explain how practitioners can take steps to protect themselves within their everyday practice in the work setting and on off site visits.</p>
<p>4 Understand how to respond to evidence or concerns that a child or young person has been abused or harmed.</p>	<p>4.1 Describe the possible signs, symptoms, indicators and behaviours that may cause concern in the context of safeguarding.</p> <p>4.2 Describe the actions to take if a child or young person alleges harm or abuse in line with policies and procedures of own setting.</p> <p>4.3 Explain the rights that children, young people and their carers have in situations where harm or abuse is suspected or alleged.</p>
<p>5 Understand how to respond to evidence or concerns that a child or young person has been bullied.</p>	<p>5.1 Explain different types of bullying and the potential effects on children and young people.</p> <p>5.2 Outline the policies and procedures that should be followed in response to concerns or evidence of bullying and explain the reasons why they are in place.</p> <p>5.3 Explain how to support a child or young person and/or their family when bullying is suspected or alleged.</p>
<p>6 Understand how to work with children and young people to support their safety and wellbeing.</p>	<p>6.1 Explain how to support children and young people's self-confidence and self-esteem.</p> <p>6.2 Analyse the importance of supporting resilience in children and young people.</p> <p>6.3 Explain why it is important to work with the child or young person to ensure they have</p>

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

		strategies to protect themselves and make decisions about safety.
	6.4	Explain ways of empowering children and young people to make positive and informed choices that support their wellbeing and safety.
7	Understand the importance of e-safety for children and young people.	7.1 Explain the risks and possible consequences for children and young people of being online and of using a mobile phone.
		7.2 . Describe ways of reducing risk to children and young people from: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• social networking</li><li>• internet use</li><li>• buying online</li><li>• using a mobile phone.</li></ul>

## Unit D/601/1696 Support Children and Young People's Health and Safety

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand how to plan and provide environments and services that support children and young people's health and safety.	1.1 Describe the factors to take into account when planning healthy and safe indoor and outdoor environments and services. 1.2 Explain how health and safety is monitored and maintained and how people in the work setting are made aware of risks and hazards and encouraged to work safely. 1.3 Identify sources of current guidance for planning healthy and safe environments and services. 1.4 Explain how current health and safety legislation, policies and procedures are implemented in own work setting or service.
2 Be able to recognise and manage risks to health, safety and security in a work setting or off site visits.	2.1 Demonstrate how to identify potential hazards to the health, safety and security of children or young people, families and other visitors and colleagues. 2.2 Demonstrate ability to deal with hazards in the work setting or in off site visits. 2.3 Undertake a health and safety risk assessment in own work setting or service illustrating how its implementation will reduce risk. 2.4 Explain how health and safety risk assessments are monitored and reviewed.
3 Understand how to support children and young people to assess and manage risk for themselves.	3.1 Explain why it is important to take a balanced approach to risk management. 3.2 Explain the dilemma between the rights and choices of children and young people and health and safety requirements. 3.3 Give example from own practice of supporting children or young people to assess and manage risk.

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- |   |  |     |   |
|---|--|-----|---|
| 4 | Understand appropriate responses to accidents, incidents emergencies and illness in work settings and off site visits. | 4.1 | Explain the policies and procedures of the setting or service in response to accidents, incidents, emergencies and illness.         |
|   |  | 4.2 | Identify the correct procedures for recording and reporting accidents, incidents, injuries, signs of illness and other emergencies. |

## Unit H/601/1697

# Develop Positive Relationship with Children, Young People and Others Involved in Their Care

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Be able to develop positive relationships with children and young people.	1.1 Explain why positive relationships with children and young people are important and how these are built and maintained.  1.2 Demonstrate how to listen to and build relationships with children and young people.  1.3 Evaluate own effectiveness in building relationships with children or young people.
2 Be able to build positive relationships with people involved in the care of children and young people.	2.1 Explain why positive relationships with people involved in the care of children and young people are important.  2.2 Demonstrate how to build positive relationships with people involved in the care of children and young people.

## Unit K/601/1698

### Working Together for the Benefit of Children and Young People

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
<p>1 Understand integrated and multiagency working.</p>	<p>1.1 Explain the importance of multiagency working and integrated working.</p> <p>1.2 Analyse how integrated working practices and multiagency working in partnership deliver better outcomes for children and young people.</p> <p>1.3 Describe the functions of external agencies with whom your work setting or service interacts.</p> <p>1.4 Explain common barriers to integrated working and multiagency working and how these can be overcome.</p> <p>1.5 Explain how and why referrals are made between agencies.</p> <p>1.6 Explain the assessment frameworks that are used in own UK Home Nation.</p>
<p>2 Be able to communicate with others for professional purposes.</p>	<p>2.1 Select appropriate communication methods for different circumstances.</p> <p>2.2 Demonstrate use of appropriate communication methods selected for different circumstances.</p> <p>2.3 Prepare reports that are accurate, legible, concise and meet legal requirements.</p>
<p>3 Be able to support organisational processes and procedures for recording, storing and sharing information.</p>	<p>3.1 Demonstrate own contribution to the development or implementation of processes and procedures for recording, storing and sharing information.</p> <p>3.2 Demonstrate how to maintain secure recording and storage systems for information:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• paper based</li> <li>• electronic.</li> </ul>

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- 3.3 Analyse the potential tension between maintaining confidentiality with the need to disclose information:
- where abuse of a child or young person is suspected
  - when it is suspected that a crime has been/may be committed.

## Unit M/601/1699

### Understand How to Support Positive Outcomes for Children and Young People

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand how the social, economic and cultural environment can impact on the outcomes and life chances of children and young people.	1.1 Describe the social, economic and cultural factors that will impact on the lives of children and young people. 1.2 Explain the importance and impact of poverty on outcomes and life chances for children and young people. 1.3 Explain the role of children and young people's personal choices and experiences on their outcomes and life chances.
2 Understand how practitioners can make a positive difference in outcomes for children and young people.	2.1 Identify the positive outcomes for children and young people that practitioners should be striving to achieve. 2.2 Explain the importance of designing services around the needs of children and young people. 2.3 Explain the importance of active participation of children and young people in decisions affecting their lives. 2.4 Explain how to support children and young people according to their age, needs and abilities to make personal choices and experiences that have a positive impact on their lives.
3 Understand the possible impact of disability, special requirements (additional needs) and attitudes on positive outcomes for children and young people.	3.1 Explain the potential impact of disability on the outcomes and life chances of children and young people. 3.2 Explain the importance of positive attitudes towards disability and specific requirements. 3.3 Explain the social and medical models of disability and the impact of each on practice.

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

4 Understand the importance of equality, diversity and inclusion in promoting positive outcomes for children and young people.

3.4 Explain the different types of support that are available for disabled children and young people and those with specific requirements.

4.1 Explain the meaning of equality, diversity and inclusion in the context of positive outcomes for children and young people.

4.2 Compare, giving examples, ways in which services for children, young people and their carers take account of and promote equality, diversity and inclusion to promote positive outcomes.

## Unit M/600/9760

### Assessment and planning with children and young people

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand how to place children and young people at the centre of assessment and planning	1.1 Explain the value of a child centred model of assessment and planning
	1.2 Explain how to identify the needs of children and young people
	1.3 Explain the importance of working with others to assess the needs of children and young people to inform planning
	1.4 Analyse current evidence about effective methods of ensuring participation and engagement of children and young people of all ages and levels of understanding in assessment and planning
	1.5 Explain the importance of permanency planning for children and young people
2 Be able to participate in assessment and planning for children and young people towards the achievement of positive outcomes	2.1 Demonstrate in own practice engagement with children or young people and their carer's in expressing their needs and aspirations to inform planning
	2.2 Demonstrate how to encourage a child or young person to plan realistic, achievable but challenging goals
	2.3 Explain how the goals and targets identified will support the achievement of positive outcomes
	2.4 Develop a plan with a child or young person and others to meet their needs with a focus on the achievement of positive outcomes
	2.5 Explain how to support a child or young person and others to understand and agree the goals, targets and outcomes of the plan
3 Be able to work with children and young people to implement the	3.1 Demonstrate how a child, young person and others are provided with clear information

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

plan for the achievement of positive outcomes	about the roles and responsibilities of all those involved in the plan
	3.2 Agree with a child, young person and others how goals and targets will be
	3.3 Demonstrate how a positive approach is used to encourage children or young people work towards the achievement of goals and targets
	3.4 Demonstrate how progress towards goals and targets is agreed and recorded with the child or young person
4 Be able to work with children and young people to review and update plans	4.1 Demonstrate how to record relevant information to prepare for a review
	4.2 Demonstrate how to support children and young people to contribute to reviewing achievement of goals and targets
	4.3 Demonstrate how to contribute to reviews based on measurement of progress of the child or young person
	4.4 Present information to reviews about aspects of the plan that are working well and those that need to be changed

## Unit F/600/9780

### Promote the wellbeing and resilience of children and young people

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand the importance of promoting positive wellbeing and resilience of children and young people	1.1 Explain the factors that influence the wellbeing of children and young people 1.2 Explain the importance of resilience for children and young people 1.3 Analyse effective ways of promoting wellbeing and resilience in the work setting 1.4 Describe ways of working with carers to promote wellbeing and resilience in children and young people
2 Understand how to support the development of children and young people's social and emotional identify and self-esteem in line with their age and level of understanding	2.1 Explain why social and emotional identity are important to the wellbeing and resilience of children and young people 2.2 Explain how to support children and young people to identify with their own self-image and identity 2.3 Demonstrate how to encourage children and young people to recognise and value their own abilities, talents and achievements 2.4 Demonstrate how to support children and young people to be involved in decisions and have as much control as possible over their lives 2.5 Explain how goals and targets identified as part of the planning process contribute towards building the self-esteem of children or young people
3 Be able to provide children and young people with a positive outlook on their lives	3.1 Demonstrate work with children or young people in a manner that is open, trustworthy, respectful and reliable

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- |   |     |  |
|---|-----|--|
|   | 3.2 | Explain how a solution focused approach will encourage children and young people to have a positive outlook on their lives               |
|   | 3.3 | Support and encourage children and young people to respond positively to challenges and disappointments                                  |
|   | 3.4 | Demonstrate ways to encourage and support children and young people to express their feelings, views and hopes                           |
|   | 3.5 | Support children and young people to reflect on the impact of their own actions and behaviour  |
| 4 |     | Be able to respond to the health needs of children and young people  |
|   | 4.1 | Support children and young people to recognise, value and meet their health needs as appropriate to their age and level of understanding |
|   | 4.2 | Encourage children and young people to make positive choices about all of their health needs   |
|   | 4.3 | Assess any risks or concerns to the health and wellbeing of children and young people and take appropriate action                        |
|   | 4.4 | Explain the importance of informing relevant people when there are concerns about a child or young person's health or wellbeing          |
|   | 4.5 | Record concerns about a child or young person's health or wellbeing following recognised procedures                                      |

## Unit F/601/0315

### Professional practice in children and young people's social care

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand the legislation and policy framework for working with children and young people in social care work settings	1.1 Explain how current and relevant legislation and policy affects work with children and young people
	1.2 Describe the impact of social care standards and codes of practice on work with children and young people
	1.3 Explain the importance of the United Nations Convention on the Rights of the Child (UNCRC)
2 Understand the professional responsibilities of working with children and young people	2.1 Explain the responsibilities of a <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• corporate parent</li><li>• professional carer</li></ul>
	2.2 Explain what is meant by a 'duty of care'.
	2.3 Analyse the impact of professional relationships on children and young people
	2.4 Give examples of poor practice and unprofessional conduct that may impact on outcomes for children and young people
	2.5 Explain the actions to take where poor practice and unprofessional conduct are having a negative impact on outcomes for children and young people
3 Be able to meet professional responsibilities by reflecting on own performance and practice	3.1 Explain the professional responsibility to maintain current and competent practice
	3.2 Engage with professional supervision in order to improve practice
	3.3 Seek, and learn from, feedback on own practice from colleagues and children and young people

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
	3.4 Explain the importance of understanding the limits of personal competence and when to seek advice
4 Be able to develop effective working relationships with professional colleagues	4.1 Respect and value the professional competence and contribution of colleagues 4.2 Explain own rights and expectations as a professional and how to assert them
5 Understand the implications of equalities legislation for working with children, young people and families	5.1 Explain how current equalities legislation affects work with children young people and families 5.2 Identify examples of good practice in promoting equality and explain how and why they are effective
6 Understand the value of diversity and the importance of equality and anti-discriminatory practice	6.1 Explain what is meant by diversity 6.2 Explain what is meant by anti-discriminatory practice giving examples of how it is applied in practice with children, young people and families 6.3 Describe the effects of discrimination and explain the potential results for children and young people

## Unit T/601/7908

### Support individuals to prepare for and settle in to new home environments

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand factors affecting a move to a new home environment	1.1 Identify reasons why individuals may move to a new home environment
	1.2 Explain the effects that moving may have on an individual and their personal relationships
	1.3 Analyse strategies that can help a move to go smoothly
2 Be able to support individuals to prepare to move into new home environments	2.1 Access information and advice to support an individual to move and settle into a new home environment
	2.2 Provide an individual and others with information about the proposed new home environment
	2.3 Work with the individual and others to plan for the move
	2.4 Support the individual to express their feelings about the move and any concerns they may have
	2.5 Demonstrate strategies to address concerns
3 Be able to support individuals to settle into new home environments	3.1 Support the individual to familiarise themselves with the new environment and living arrangements
	3.2 Support the individual to explore opportunities to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• maintain existing social networks and/or</li><li>• create new social networks</li></ul>
	3.3 Support the individual to adjust to living with new people or to living alone

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:**

**Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- |   |     |  |
|---|-----|--|
|   | 3.4 | Work with the individual and others to identify and agree any changes that will help the individual to feel more comfortable in the new home environment |
| 4 | 4.1 | Be able to support individuals to review the impact of new home environments   |
|   | 4.2 | Work with the individual to review positive and negative effects of the move   |
|   | 4.3 | Work with the individual and others to plan how to maintain benefits of the move and address any difficulties  |
|   | 4.4 | Agree any additional resources, facilities and support required  |
|   | 4.5 | Record and report on the outcomes of the move, in line with agreed ways of working   |

## Unit F/601/3764

### Promote positive behaviour

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand how legislation, frameworks, codes of practice and policies relate to positive behaviour support.	1.1 Explain how legislation, frameworks, codes of practice and policies relating to positive behaviour support are applied to own working practice.  1.2 Define what is meant by restrictive interventions.  1.3 Explain when restrictive interventions may and may not be used.  1.4 Explain who needs to be informed of any incidents where restrictive interventions have been used.  1.5 Explain why the least restrictive interventions should always be used when dealing with incidents of challenging behaviour.  1.6 Describe safeguards that must be in place if restrictive physical interventions are used.
2 Understand the context and use of proactive and reactive strategies.	2.1 Explain the difference between proactive and reactive strategies.  2.2 Identify the proactive and reactive strategies that are used within own work role.  2.3 Explain the importance of identifying patterns of behaviour or triggers to challenging behaviour when establishing proactive or reactive strategies to be used.  2.4 Explain the importance of maintaining a person or child centred approach when establishing proactive strategies.  2.5 Explain the importance of reinforcing positive behaviour with individuals.  2.6 Evaluate the impact on an individual's wellbeing of using reactive rather than proactive strategies.

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- |   |   |  |
|---|---|--|
| 3 | Be able to promote positive behaviour.  | 3.1 Explain how a range of factors may be associated with challenging behaviours.  |
|   |   | 3.2 Evaluate the effectiveness of proactive strategies on mitigating challenging behaviours.   |
|   |   | 3.3 Highlight, praise and support positive aspects of an individual's behaviour in order to reinforce positive behaviour.  |
|   |   | 3.4 Demonstrate how to model to others best practice in promoting positive behaviour.  |
| 4 | Be able to respond appropriately to incidents of challenging behaviour.                   | 4.1 Identify types of challenging behaviours.  |
|   |   | 4.2 Demonstrate how to respond to incidents of challenging behaviour following behaviour support plans, agreed ways of working or organisational guidelines.   |
|   |   | 4.3 Explain the steps that are taken to maintain the dignity of and respect for an individual when responding to an incident of challenging behaviour.   |
|   |   | 4.4 Demonstrate how to complete records accurately and objectively in line with work setting requirements following an incident of challenging behaviour.  |
| 5 | Be able to support individuals and others following an incident of challenging behaviour. | 5.1 Demonstrate methods to support an individual to return to a calm state following an incident of challenging behaviour.   |
|   |   | 5.2 Describe how an individual can be supported to reflect on an incident including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• How they were feeling at the time prior to and directly before the incident</li><li>• Their behaviour</li><li>• The consequence of their behaviour</li><li>• How they were feeling after the incident</li></ul> |

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- |   |  |     |   |
|---|--|-----|---|
| 6 | Be able to review and revise approaches to promoting positive behaviour. | 5.3 | Describe the complex feelings that may be experienced by others involved or witnessing an incident of challenging behaviour.                  |
|   |  | 5.4 | Demonstrate how to debrief others involved in an incident of challenging behaviour.   |
|   |  | 5.5 | Describe the steps that should be taken to check for injuries following an incident of challenging behaviour.                                 |
|   |  | 6.1 | Work with others to analyse the antecedent, behaviour and consequences of an incident of challenging behaviour.                               |
|   |  | 6.2 | Work with others to review the approaches to promoting positive behaviour using information from records, de-briefing and support activities. |
|   |  | 6.3 | Demonstrate how reflection on own role in an incident of challenging behaviour can improve the promotion of positive behaviour.               |

## Unit F/601/4056

### Support use of medication in social care settings

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand the legislative framework for the use of medication in social care settings	1.1 Identify legislation that governs the use of medication in social care settings
	1.2 Outline the legal classification system for medication
	1.3 Explain how and why policies and procedures or agreed ways of working must reflect and incorporate legislative requirements
2 Know about common types of medication and their use	2.1 Identify common types of medication
	2.2 List conditions for which each type of medication may be prescribed
	2.3 Describe changes to an individual's physical or mental well-being that may indicate an adverse reaction to a medication
3 Understand roles and responsibilities in the use of medication in social care settings	3.1 Describe the roles and responsibilities of those involved in prescribing, dispensing and supporting use of medication
	3.2 Explain where responsibilities lie in relation to use of 'over the counter' remedies and supplements
4 Understand techniques for administering medication	4.1 Describe the routes by which medication can be administered
	4.2 Describe different forms in which medication may be presented
	4.3 Describe materials and equipment that can assist in administering medication
5 Be able to receive, store and dispose of medication supplies safely	5.1 Demonstrate how to receive supplies of medication in line with agreed ways of working
	5.2 Demonstrate how to store medication safely

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
	5.3 Demonstrate how to dispose of un-used or unwanted medication safely
6 Know how to promote the rights of the individual when managing medication	6.1 Explain the importance of the following principles in the use of medication <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• consent</li> <li>• self-medication or active participation</li> <li>• dignity and privacy</li> <li>• confidentiality</li> </ul>
	6.2 Explain how risk assessment can be used to promote an individual's independence in managing medication
	6.3 Describe how ethical issues that may arise over the use of medication can be addressed
7 Be able to support use of medication	7.1 Demonstrate how to access information about an individual's medication
	7.2 Demonstrate how to support an individual to use medication in ways that promote hygiene, safety, dignity and active participation
	7.3 Demonstrate strategies to ensure that medication is used or administered correctly
	7.4 Demonstrate how to address any practical difficulties that may arise when medication is used
	7.5 Demonstrate how and when to access further information or support about the use of medication
8 Be able to record and report on use of medication	8.1 Demonstrate how to record use of medication and any changes in an individual associated with it
	8.2 Demonstrate how to report on use of medication and problems associated with medication, in line with agreed ways of working

## Unit A/601/1334

### Provide information and advice to children and young people

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand the role of practitioners in providing information and advice to children and young people	1.1 Explain the importance of providing accurate and up to date information and advice to children and young people  1.2 Explain the role of practitioners in providing impartial information and advice to children and young people
2 Be able to establish and address the information and advice needs of children and young people	2.1 Encourage the participation of and engagement with children and young people to establish their information and advice needs  2.2 Select information from appropriate sources that will best meet the needs of the young person  2.3 Verify the accuracy and currency of information before presenting it to the young person  2.4 Explain approaches to managing situations when the child and young person's choices are different to those of their carers
3 Be able to provide children and young people with appropriate information and advice to enable them to make informed choices	3.1 Explain why it is important to provide opportunities for children and young people to make informed choices  3.2 Evaluate with the young person the choices available to them  3.3 Demonstrate in own practice how to check that the young person has understood the range of options available to them.

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- 3.4 Record the interaction with the young person following all organisational procedures and legal requirements

**Unit F/601/1349****Support young people to move towards independence and manage their lives****Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- |   |  |     |  |
|---|--|-----|--|
| 1 | Understand the way that young people move from dependence to independence    | 1.1 | Explain the reasons why some young people may find it difficult to move to independence  |
|   |  | 1.2 | Explain the concept that independence is relative to each individual young person's stage of development and level of understanding and ability                                  |
|   |  | 1.3 | Explain the reasons why independence is not always permanent and that some young people may go through transitions and move between dependence and independence at various times |
| 2 | Be able to prepare young people for the practical challenges of independence | 2.1 | Demonstrate how to work with young people to ensure that they can shop, store and prepare food that will provide a healthy, balanced diet  |
|   |  | 2.2 | Prepare plans with young people that will assist them in maintaining their own health and wellbeing  |
|   |  | 2.3 | Provide young people with information to prepare them to manage and maintain accommodation and to find advice if necessary   |
|   |  | 2.4 | Provide young people with information about how to manage personal finances  |
|   |  | 2.5 | Explain why practical support and advice for independence is a long term project   |

<b>Learning Outcome - The learner will:</b>	<b>Assessment Criterion - The learner can:</b>
<p>3 Be able to prepare young people for the emotional challenges of independence</p>	<p>3.1 Demonstrate how to encourage young people to recognise the importance of society norms of acceptable behaviour and interaction</p> <p>3.2 Provide young people with information about where to find support if they feel isolated or lonely</p> <p>3.3 Explain how to support young people who may feel worried and ambivalent about becoming independent</p> <p>3.4 Demonstrate how to support young people to develop resilience in order to face challenges and disappointments</p> <p>3.5 Explain the importance of having somewhere that is 'home'</p>
<p>4 Be able to prepare young people to assess personal risks and protect themselves</p>	<p>4.1 Explain to young people how to assess risks in day to day situations</p> <p>4.2 Demonstrate how to prepare young people to minimise risks</p> <p>4.3 Provide young people with information and skills to protect themselves and know when to seek help</p>

## Unit A/600/9809

### Work with children and young people in a residential care setting

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand the legal, policy, rights and theoretical framework for residential care for children and young people	1.1 Outline current theoretical approaches to residential provision for children and young people 1.2 Explain the relevant legal and rights framework that underpins work with children and young people in residential care 1.3 Explain the influence of current policies and legislation on residential care provision 1.4 Describe how the life chances and outcomes of children and young people in residential care compare with those who are not
2 Understand own role and professional responsibilities in a residential care setting	2.1 Explain the requirements of professional codes of conduct and how they apply to day to day work activities 2.2 Explain how to ensure that own practice is inclusive and anti-discriminatory and how to challenge practice that is not 2.3 Analyse how power, prejudice and discrimination can affect children and young people 2.4 Explain how to fulfil own responsibilities to colleagues through responsible, constructive and co-operative team working 2.5 Explain the professional requirement to maintain current, competent practice 2.6 Explain the importance of maintaining positive relationships with people in the local community
3 Be able to work with children and young people through the day to	3.1 Demonstrate how to develop relationships with children or young people through jointly undertaking practical activities

<b>Learning Outcome - The learner will:</b>		<b>Assessment Criterion - The learner can:</b>	
	day activities involved in sharing a living space	3.2	Demonstrate ways to work with children or young people to plan, review and evaluate activities and agreements for group living
		3.3	Demonstrate in own practice how to encourage children or young people to take responsibility for their own plans
		3.4	Demonstrate how to link planning day to day activities in a residential setting links to the overall care plan for a child or young person
		3.5	Demonstrate how to encourage positive behaviour through modelling and reinforcement in all aspects of group living
4	Be able to work with children and young people in a residential setting	4.1	Demonstrate how to facilitate agreement of arrangements for living together regardless of group size
		4.2	Demonstrate how to address and resolve conflict and disagreements with and between children or young people in a residential setting
		4.3	Use an understanding of group dynamics to promote and encourage children or young people to achieve positive outcomes in all aspects of their lives
5	Be able to safeguard children and young people in a residential care setting	5.1	Demonstrate how to equip children or young people to feel safe and to manage risks
		5.2	Explain the practical application of legislation, policies and procedures and key messages from research and child protection enquiries for residential care settings
		5.3	Describe how to take action to protect children and young people in residential care from risks of harm or abuse from outside or inside the residential setting

## Unit L/601/2861

# Support positive practice with children and young people with speech, language and communication needs

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand the concept of positive practice when working with children and young people with speech, language and communication needs	1.1 Explain how to recognise and build on the strengths of a child or young person by giving different examples of positive strategies  1.2 Compare the differences between strategies based on children and young people's strengths and abilities and those based around children's difficulties  1.3 Provide examples of how current research evidence supports positive practice
2 Know how to work alongside speech, language and communication specialists to use appropriate strategies and targets to support children and young people	2.1 Identify and describe the different strategies and targets that can support children and young people's speech, language and communication needs  2.2 Explain the process of how supportive strategies are selected and implemented to support children and young people's speech language and communication needs  2.3 Explain own role in the process of how targets are set, monitored and evaluated along with specialist  2.4 Compare different examples of how strategies and targets have been used to support children and young people with speech, language and communication needs
3 Be able to place children and young people at the centre of professional practice when working with children and	3.1 Review and identify the particular issues and implications of own work setting for children and young people's speech, language and communication

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
<p>young people with speech, language and communication needs</p>	<p>3.2 Demonstrate ways to adapt and modify own communication, resources and tasks to support children and young people's speech, language and communication</p> <p>3.3 Demonstrate effective ways to find out the views of children and young people and take them into account in planning and delivering practice</p>
<p>4 Understand how to work with others to support the social, emotional and cognitive needs of children and young people</p>	<p>4.1 Explain how speech, language and communication needs can affect social, emotional and cognitive development in children and young people</p> <p>4.2 Explain how social, emotional and cognitive needs can affect children and young people's speech, language and communication</p> <p>4.3 Review and report on the roles of other professionals in supporting children and young people and explain how to access additional support</p>

## Unit K/601/0132

### Support children or young people in their own home

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand roles and responsibilities in relation to supporting children or young people in their own home	1.1 Outline the policies and procedures and codes of practice that set out responsibilities in supporting children or young people in their home  1.2 Explain why it is important to be reliable and dependable when working with children or young people in their own home  1.3 Explain how both formal and informal risk assessments are carried out when working with children or young people in their own home  1.4 Explain what needs to be recorded when working with children or young people in their own home  1.5 Give examples of any areas that may give cause for concern when working with children or young people in their own home and the actions that should be taken in each case
2 Be able to build positive relationships with children or young people and their carers when working in their home	2.1 Explain the importance of gathering information about the needs and preferences of children or young people  2.2 Demonstrate methods of gathering information about the needs and preferences of children or young people  2.3 Evaluate the complexities of developing relationships with children or young people in their own home as a professional worker  2.4 Explain why a sensitive approach is needed when working with children or young people in their own home

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- |   |   |     |   |
|---|---|-----|---|
| 3 | Be able to provide support for children or young people to engage in activities that meet their needs and preferences | 2.5 | Explain steps that can be taken to resolve conflicts or difficulties with children, young people or carers  |
|   |   | 3.1 | Demonstrate how activities with children or young people are planned to include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Preparation of the environment</li><li>• Preparation of resources</li><li>• Consideration of the level of support required</li></ul> |
|   |   | 3.2 | Demonstrate how children or young people are supported to engage in activities that meet their needs and preferences  |
|   |   | 3.3 | Reflect on the success of activities carried out with children or young people and how planning and implementation of these are reviewed as a result.   |

## Unit M/503/5877

### Support positive attachments for children and young people

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand the importance of positive attachment for the wellbeing of children and young people.	1.1 Summarise theories of attachment.
	1.2 Explain why positive attachment is important for children and young people.
	1.3 Evaluate the potential <b>impact</b> on the wellbeing of children and young people of not forming positive attachments.
	1.4 Explain the role of <b>carers</b> in supporting children and young people to form positive attachments.
2 Understand how resilience can reduce vulnerability of children and young people to separation and loss.	2.1 Describe what is meant by the term resilience.
	2.2 Explain how the development of resilience can help children and young people cope with separation and loss.
	2.3 Explain ways carers can help develop resilience in children and young people.
3 Be able to promote positive attachments for children or young people.	3.1 Engage a child or young person in routines and activities that promote positive relationships and wellbeing.
	3.2 Use active listening with a child or young person to promote the development of positive relationships and wellbeing.
	3.3 Seek advice and support from <b>others</b> when concerned about the attachment behaviour of a child or young person.
	3.4 Implement <b>agreed strategies</b> with a child or young person to promote positive relationships and wellbeing.

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- |   |  |     |  |
|---|--|-----|--|
| 4 | Be able to develop own practice in supporting positive attachments for children or young people. | 4.1 | Describe how a child or young person has been supported by own practice to develop positive attachments.                     |
|   |  | 4.2 | Evaluate why approaches in supporting positive attachments have been successful or unsuccessful for a child or young person. |
|   |  | 4.3 | Reflect on how own practice  |

## Unit M/504/2196

### Support individuals with autistic spectrum conditions

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand legislative frameworks that relate to individuals with autistic spectrum conditions.	1.1 Outline the legislative frameworks that relate to an individual with autistic spectrum condition.  1.2 Analyse how legislative frameworks underpin the development of services for individuals with autistic spectrum condition.
2 Understand the main characteristics of autistic spectrum conditions.	2.1 Outline a range of theories on autistic spectrum condition.  2.2 Explain the characteristics of autistic spectrum conditions.  2.3 Describe the sensory and perceptual difficulties commonly experienced by individuals with an autistic spectrum condition.  2.4 Describe other conditions that may be associated with the autistic spectrum.  2.5 Describe how language and intellectual abilities vary across the autistic spectrum.
3 Be able to support individuals with autistic spectrum conditions.	3.1 Describe an individual's experience of the autistic spectrum condition and its characteristics.  3.2 Support an individual to understand the impact of their autistic condition on themselves and others.  3.3 Encourage an individual to recognise the strengths of their characteristics.  3.4 Support an individual with an autistic spectrum condition to develop their personal skills.

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
<p>4 Be able to support individuals with autistic spectrum condition with verbal and non-verbal communication.</p>	<p>3.5 Support an individual and others to develop strategies for dealing with the impact of an autistic spectrum condition.</p> <p>4.1 Identify specific methods of communication for an individual.</p> <p>4.2 Use specific methods of communication to support interactions with an individual.</p> <p>4.3 Ascertain patterns of behaviour associated with an individual's autistic spectrum condition.</p> <p>4.4 Support an individual in ways that recognise the significance and meaning of their behaviour.</p>
<p>5 Be able to support individuals with transitions and change.</p>	<p>5.1 Support an individual with autistic spectrum condition to make transitions.</p> <p>5.2 Work with an individual and other to recognise routines that are important to the individual.</p> <p>5.3 Support an individual during changes to their routines.</p> <p>5.4 Enable an individual to use routines to make sense and order of their daily life.</p> <p>5.5 Recognise how to make adaptations to the physical sensory environment to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Reduce sensory overload</li> <li>• Increase sensory simulation.</li> </ul> <p>5.6 Work with an individual and others to develop strategies that help them manage their physical and sensory environment.</p>

## Unit H/503/8842

### Prepare, load and operate decontamination equipment

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Be able to apply the standard procedures for preparing, loading and operating decontamination equipment.	1.1 Select the appropriate PPE.
	1.2 Explain the choice of PPE selected.
	1.3 Explain the function of each piece of decontamination equipment.
	1.4 List the checks that are carried out on the decontamination equipment in line with relevant legislation and guidance requirements.
	1.5 Complete the housekeeping responsibilities in relation to the decontamination area equipment.
	1.6 Describe the operating instructions for washer/disinfectors.
	1.7 Explain the process followed when discovering abnormal performance of decontamination equipment.
	1.8 State the concentrations of detergents, other chemicals and quality of water used in the decontamination process.
2 Be able to apply the correct process to be used for the items to be decontaminated.	2.1 Disassemble a tray for use in a washer disinfectant.
	2.2 Check off instruments against checklist taking notice of any comments made by user.
	2.3 Explain the importance of keeping sets of items being processed together.
	2.4 Scan items for tracking and traceability purposes in accordance with organisational procedures.
	2.5 Identify items requiring special attention and handle in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- |   |   |     |  |
|---|---|-----|--|
| 3 | Be able to follow the manufacturers and organisational guidelines when cleaning of equipment and instruments. | 2.6 | Explain the importance of ensuring, when manually cleaning, that the correct amount of water to chemicals is used and at what temperature the water should not exceed. |
|   |   | 3.1 | Dismantle items to be processed and where appropriate, use brush and jet sprays ensuring instrument is fully submerged if items are to be manually cleaned.            |
|   |   | 3.2 | Maintain permissible weight and reach limits in accordance with manual handling regulations.   |
|   |   | 3.3 | Load items in the correct position with maximum exposure to the process.   |
|   |   | 3.4 | State the time and temperature requirements to achieve decontamination and disinfection of all items processed in the washer/disinfector.                              |
|   |   | 3.5 | Explain the procedure to follow with inadequately cleaned items.   |
|   |   | 3.6 | Carry out the process for removal and disposal of PPE.   |

## Unit K/503/8843

### Prepare re-useable medical devices for sterilisation

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Be able to prepare the decontaminated equipment in the clean room.	1.1 Unload the washer/disinfectors. 1.2 Check that the parameters of the wash cycle have been met. 1.3 Check visually that all devices are clean and dry; inspecting delicate devices in a way that will avoid damage. 1.4 State the process and purpose of inspecting and assembling equipment. 1.5 Explain the importance of being able to recognise instruments processed by the department. 1.6 Test instrumentation to ensure correct operation. 1.7 Follow the process when medical devices are missing or in need of repair.
2 Be able to identify standard precautions for infection prevention.	2.1 Select the personal protective equipment (PPE) to be worn in the clean change area. 2.2 Wear the correct PPE for the clean area. 2.3 List the requirements of the health hygiene and dress code policy. 2.4 Describe the difference between a 'dirty room' (wash area) and a clean room. 2.5 Explain the checks that are routinely carried out in the clean room to ensure that it remains a clean environment and meets the relevant legislation and organisational procedures. 2.6 Explain the importance of rejecting damaged or dirty devices.
3 Be able to pack medical devices for sterilisation.	3.1 Scan items into the computer for tracking and traceability purposes.

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:**

**Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- 3.2 Place the instruments into the tray/din in the correct position using the tray sheets establishing all items are present.
- 3.3 Confirm devices are suitable for function and serviceability.
- 3.4 Identify when rigid containers must be used.
- 3.5 Identify the types of packaging materials used for items to be sterilised.
- 3.6 State the reason for packaging 'disinfected only' differently.
- 3.7 Apply the different methods of wrapping and sealing ensuring theatres can open aseptically.
- 3.8 Secure packaging, using the correct labels and tape.
- 3.9 State the consequences of not following the correct processes on packaging and labelling.

## Unit M/503/8844

### Carry out sterilisation and product release of re-useable medical devices

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Be able to handle medical devices in accordance with organisational policies.	1.1 Select the correct PPE to be worn in the area.
	1.2 Wear the correct PPE for this area.
	1.3 Store raw materials in the correct manner.
	1.4 Describe the procedures for transferring raw materials into the working areas.
	1.5 Use batch codes to identify raw materials.
	1.6 Store sterilised devices in accordance with policies and procedures.
	1.7 State the checks that are carried out on the sterilising equipment in line with relevant legislation and guidance requirements.
2 Be able to demonstrate loading and unloading into the steriliser.	2.1 Name the daily, weekly, quarterly and annually process of steriliser tests and the importance of these taking place.
	2.2 Scan for tracking and traceability.
	2.3 Load items into the steriliser using the correct procedure.
	2.4 Monitor the printout to ensure the parameters have been met on completion of cycle.
	2.5 Unload and cool items from the steriliser.
	2.6 Explain what records and logs are kept in this area and their importance.
3 Understand the importance of following product release protocols.	3.1 Explain the methods used to ensure that tracking and traceability is achieved.
	3.2 List the checks that are needed prior to product release.

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:**

**Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- 3.3 Explain the circumstances which may result in a sterilised pack being rejected.
- 3.4 Explain in what situations a decontamination certificate is required.

## Unit T/503/8845

### Understand how to monitor the decontamination process

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand how to monitor the decontamination process.	1.1 Explain the importance of monitoring all aspects of the decontamination cycle in accordance with legislation guidance, quality management system, organisational policies and procedures.  1.2 Explain the process and purpose of tracking and traceability.  1.3 Explain the importance of testing all decontamination equipment in line with legislation guidance, quality management system, organisational policies and procedures.
2 Understand the requirements and responsibilities for the decontamination process of medical devices.	2.1 Explain the purpose of a quality management system and the standards that are required.  2.2 Explain the importance of analysing records to monitor and measure performance and maintain quality maintenance.  2.3 Explain how to ensure tracking and traceability is safe and reliable.  2.4 Explain the process and purpose of internal and external audits.

## Unit J/601/1515

### Monitor and solve customer service problems

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 solve immediate customer service problems	1.1 respond positively to customer service problems following organisational guidelines 1.2 solve customer service problems when they have sufficient authority 1.3 work with others to solve customer service problems 1.4 keep customers informed of the actions being taken 1.5 check with customers that they are comfortable with the actions being taken 1.6 solve problems with service systems and procedures that might affect customers before customers become aware of them 1.7 inform managers and colleagues of the steps taken to solve specific problems
2 identify repeated customer service problems and options for solving them	2.1 identify repeated customer service problems 2.2 identify the options for dealing with a repeated customer service problem and consider the advantages and disadvantages of each option 2.3 work with others to select the best option for solving a repeated customer service problem, balancing customer expectations with the needs of the organisation
3 take action to avoid the repetition of customer service problems	3.1 obtain the approval of somebody with sufficient authority to change organisational guidelines in order to reduce the chance of a problem being repeated 3.2 action their agreed solution 3.3 keep their customers informed in a positive and clear manner of steps being taken to solve any service problems

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:**

**Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- |   |   |     |  |
|---|---|-----|--|
| 4 | understand how to monitor and solve customer service problems | 3.4 | monitor the changes they have made and adjust them if appropriate  |
|   |   | 4.1 | describe organisational procedures and systems for dealing with customer service problems  |
|   |   | 4.2 | describe the organisational procedures and systems for identifying repeated customer service problems  |
|   |   | 4.3 | explain how the successful resolution of customer service problems contributes to customer loyalty with the external customer and improved working relationships with service partners or internal customers |
|   |   | 4.4 | explain how to negotiate with and reassure customers while their problems are being solved   |

## Unit Y/600/9669

### Plan, allocate and monitor work of a team

Learning Outcome - The learner will:		Assessment Criterion - The learner can:	
1	Be able to plan work for a team.	1.1	Agree team objectives with own manager.
		1.2	Develop a plan for a team to meet agreed objectives, taking into account capacity and capabilities of the team.
2	Be able to allocate work across a team.	2.1	Discuss team plans with a team.
		2.2	Agree work allocation and SMART (Specific, Measurable, Achievable, Realistic and Time-bound) objectives with team members.
		2.3	Agree standard of work required by team.
3	Be able to manage team members to achieve team objectives.	3.1	Support all team members in order to achieve team objectives.
4	Be able to monitor and evaluate the performance of team members.	4.1	Assess team members' work against agreed standards and objectives.
		4.2	Identify and monitor conflict within a team.
		4.3	Identify causes for team members not meeting team objectives.
5	Be able to improve the performance of a team.	5.1	Identify ways of improving team performance.
		5.2	Provide constructive feedback to team members to improve their performance.
		5.3	Implement identified ways of improving team performance.

## Unit J/503/7165

### Understand Stroke Care Management

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
<p>1 Understand how to support individuals to manage stroke according to legislation, policy and guidance</p>	<p>1.1 Summarise current legislation, policy and guidance related to supporting individuals with stroke</p> <p>1.2 Explain what current best practice is in the initial stages of stroke care management</p> <p>1.3 Explain how an individual could be encouraged to review their lifestyle and promote their own health and well-being</p> <p>1.4 Describe the potential implications of mental capacity for an individual following a stroke</p>
<p>2 Understand specific communication factors affecting individuals following a stroke</p>	<p>2.1 Evaluate the effects of stroke on the brain in relation to the ability to communicate</p> <p>2.2 Describe a range of common communication methods and aids to support individuals affected by a stroke</p> <p>2.3 Analyse methods of facilitating communication using supported conversation techniques</p> <p>2.4 Identify any pre-existing illnesses or disabilities that need to be taken into account when addressing communication</p> <p>2.5 Describe the effects on the individual of experiencing communication difficulties</p> <p>2.6 Identify additional agencies and resources to support with communication needs</p>
<p>3 Understand changing physical needs of individuals affected by stroke</p>	<p>3.1 Describe the changes in the brain of an individual affected by a stroke</p> <p>3.2 Describe the physical effects of stroke on an individual</p>

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
	<p>3.3 Explain the impact a stroke may have on swallowing and nutrition</p> <p>3.4 Describe the possible effects of stroke on sensory ability</p> <p>3.5 Analyse the fluctuating nature of effects of stroke on an individual</p>
<p>4 Understand the impact of the effects of stroke on daily living</p>	<p>4.1 Explain the use of daily activities to promote recovery and independence</p> <p>4.2 Explain the importance of repetition to promote recovery</p> <p>4.3 Identify the effects of fatigue in stroke rehabilitation</p> <p>4.4 Describe the implication of stroke on lifestyle</p>
<p>5 Understand the associated complications for an individual with stroke</p>	<p>5.1 Explain the psychological and emotional effects on the individual with stroke</p> <p>5.2 Describe the cognitive needs of the individual with stroke</p> <p>5.3 Describe the health needs that may be associated with stroke</p>
<p>6 Understand the importance of adopting a person centred approach in stroke care management</p>	<p>6.1 Explain how person centred values must influence all aspects of stroke care management</p> <p>6.2 Explain the importance of working in partnership with others to support care management</p> <p>6.3 Describe the importance of working in ways that promote active participation in stroke care management</p>

## Unit F/602/4005

### Conduct hearing assessments

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
<p>1 Understand how to conduct hearing assessments in line with current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice guidelines</p>	<p>1.1 Summarise how current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice guidelines affect practice related to assessing an individual's hearing</p> <p>1.2 Explain how to maintain the privacy, safety, dignity and comfort of individuals throughout the hearing assessment</p> <p>1.3 Explain how to prepare for and administer a hearing assessment in line with local policy and protocol</p> <p>1.4 Identify reasons for not conducting a hearing assessment on an individual</p> <p>1.5 Identify potential adverse reactions to hearing assessments</p>
<p>2 Know the anatomy and physiology of the ear related to hearing</p>	<p>2.1 Describe the anatomy and physiology of the ear</p> <p>2.2 Outline the reasons for hearing impairment</p> <p>2.3 Describe the levels of hearing loss</p> <p>2.4 Describe the effects that hearing loss can have on an individual</p>
<p>3 Understand how to maintain equipment required to assess individuals' hearing</p>	<p>3.1 Identify materials and equipment required to assess an individual's hearing</p> <p>3.2 Explain how to maintain equipment</p> <p>3.3 Describe procedures and timescales for the calibration of equipment</p>
<p>4 Be able to prepare to conduct hearing assessments</p>	<p>4.1 Apply standard precautions for infection control</p>

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
	<p>4.2 Apply health and safety measures relevant to conducting hearing assessments</p> <p>4.3 Prepare equipment for the hearing assessment</p> <p>4.4 Confirm the individual's identity and gain valid consent prior to beginning the hearing assessment</p> <p>4.5 Position the individual and self so that the assessment can be conducted safely and comfortably</p>
<p>5 Be able to conduct hearing assessments</p>	<p>5.1 Explain the procedure to the individual/carer in a way that is sensitive to the individual's personal beliefs and preferences</p> <p>5.2 Conduct the hearing assessment</p> <p>5.3 Monitor the individual for adverse reactions throughout the assessment, taking action in line with local policy and protocol</p> <p>5.4 Provide follow-up advice and instructions, referring to health care professionals in line with local policy and protocol</p>
<p>6 Be able to record and report the results of hearing assessments</p>	<p>6.1 Complete the audiology report in line with local policy and protocol</p> <p>6.2 Update individual's records</p> <p>6.3 Report results to the referring clinician, carrying out any post procedural instructions in line with local policy and protocol</p>

## Unit H/602/4000

### Conduct External Ear Examinations

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand how to conduct external ear examinations in line with current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice guidelines	1.1 Summarise how current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice guidelines affect practice related to conducting ear examinations  1.2 Describe how to prepare an environment for ear examinations in line with local policy and protocol  1.3 Describe how to prepare individuals for external ear examinations in line with local policy and protocol  1.4 Explain the importance of positioning the individual and self correctly prior to undertaking the ear examination  1.5 Describe how to maintain the privacy, safety, dignity and comfort of individuals throughout the examination  1.6 Explain how to use an otoscope to examine the external ear
2 Know the anatomy of the ear as related to conducting ear examinations	2.1 Identify the main components of the external ear  2.2 Identify the main components of the middle and inner ear
3 Understand reasons for conducting an examination of the external ear	3.1 Describe potential effects of abnormalities of the external ear  3.2 Describe the signs and symptoms which may indicate an abnormality of the external ear  3.3 Explain why it is important to examine the external ear only
4 Be able to prepare to conduct external ear examinations	4.1 Apply standard precautions for infection control

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
	<p>4.2 Apply health and safety measures relevant to the procedure and environment</p> <p>4.3 Prepare equipment for the ear examination</p> <p>4.4 Confirm the individual's identity and gain valid consent prior to beginning the examination</p> <p>4.5 Position the individual and self so that the examination can be conducted safely and comfortably</p>
<p>5 Be able to conduct external ear examinations</p>	<p>5.1 Explain the procedure to the individual/carer in a way that is sensitive to their personal beliefs and preferences</p> <p>5.2 Conduct an examination of the external ear</p> <p>5.3 Monitor the individual for adverse reactions throughout the examination, taking action in line with local policy and protocol</p> <p>5.4 Explain findings to the individual/carer</p>
<p>6 Be able to record and report results from external ear examinations</p>	<p>6.1 Record findings in line with local policy and protocol</p> <p>6.2 Report any further actions to the appropriate member of staff in line with local policy and protocol</p>

## Unit L/602/1009

### Carry out intravenous infusion

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice for performing intravenous cannulation	1.1 Summarise the current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice guidelines for performing intravenous cannulation  1.2 Explain responsibilities and accountability in relation to current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice guidelines  1.3 Explain the importance of working within own role and of seeking advice when faced with situations outside this role
2 Understand the purpose and functions of intravenous infusion	2.1 Explain the anatomy and physiology of the circulatory system in relation to the administration of intravenous fluids  2.2 Explain the reasons for intravenous infusion  2.3 Explain the clinical indications of infection in the cannula site and the actions that should be taken if signs of infection are evident  2.4 Explain the possible risks and adverse reactions to intravenous fluids and actions that should be taken  2.5 Explain the possible risks and adverse reactions to infusion of incorrect volumes of intravenous fluids and actions that should be taken
3 Be able to prepare to carry out intravenous infusion	2.6 Explain the range of materials and equipment used for intravenous infusion  3.1 Implement health and safety measures relevant to the procedure and environment  3.2 Apply standard precautions for infection control

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
	<p>3.3 Confirm the individual's identity and gain valid consent</p> <p>3.4 Communicate information in a way that is sensitive to the personal beliefs and preferences of the individual</p> <p>3.5 Confirm the required intravenous fluid to be administered in line with local protocols</p>
<p>4 Be able to carry out intravenous infusion</p>	<p>4.1 Check the intravenous fluid to be administered is in date and clear, with all seals intact</p> <p>4.2 Ensure the administration set is primed and connected to the fluid container and cannula in a way that ensures no contamination or leakage</p> <p>4.3 Adjust the fluid administration rate according to the needs of the individual and the fluid being administered</p>
<p>5 Be able to monitor and report on the intravenous infusion</p>	<p>5.1 Monitor the individual's condition and seek support and guidance from a member of the team if events or risks are outside sphere of competence</p> <p>5.2 Report any condition which may indicate adverse reactions to the procedure, taking action in accordance with local policy and protocol</p> <p>5.3 Record the administration in accordance with local policy and protocol</p> <p>5.4 Monitor the cannulation site at regular intervals, taking action in accordance with local policy and protocol</p>

## Unit R/602/0959

### Carry out blood collection from fixed or central lines

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice which impact on own role	1.1 Summarise the current legislation, national guidelines, policies, protocols and good practice guidelines for collecting blood from fixed or central lines
	1.2 Explain the importance of applying standard precautions to the preparation of materials and equipment and identify the potential consequences of poor practice
2 Understand the procedures involved in the collection of arterial blood	2.1 Explain the types and categories of risks which may be involved when carrying out blood collection and the action to take if these occur
	2.2 Describe the different types of fixed or central line blood collection systems and equipment and explain the situations in which they may be used
	2.3 Explain the importance of disposing of used equipment and clinical waste from collection of blood from fixed or central lines in line with local policy and protocol
3 Be able to prepare to carry out blood collection	3.1 Confirm the individual's identity and gain valid consent
	3.2 Communicate accurate information in a way that is sensitive to the personal beliefs and preferences of the individual
	3.3 Apply standard precautions for infection control
	3.4 Apply health and safety measures relevant to the procedure and environment
4 Be able to carry out blood collection procedures	4.1 Control the blood flow throughout the collection procedure in line with local policy and protocol
	4.2 Attach the blood collection equipment to the blood collection site in the fixed or central line

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
	<p>4.3 Collect the blood sample in sufficient volume into a sterile container in accordance with local policy and protocol</p> <p>4.4 Follow local protocols when unable to collect the required sample of blood</p> <p>4.5 Flush the line with sterile solution to maintain patency on completion of the blood collection</p>
<p>5 Be able to record, report and forward on blood samples</p>	<p>5.1 Label the blood sample according to local protocol</p> <p>5.2 Request analysis of the blood sample in line with local policy and protocol</p> <p>5.3 Request analysis of the blood sample in line with local policy and protocol</p> <p>5.4 Document blood collection procedure in accordance with local policy and protocol</p>
<p>6 Be able to monitor and report on blood collection</p>	<p>6.1 Monitor the individual and report any condition or behaviour which may signify adverse reactions to the procedure and take action in accordance with local policy and protocol</p> <p>6.2 Seek immediate assistance when remedial action is required and is beyond own scope of practice</p>

## Unit D/503/1839

### Diabetes Awareness

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
<p>1 Understand diabetes and the associated implications</p>	<p>1.1 Define diabetes</p> <p>1.2 Identify prevalence rates for different types of diabetes</p> <p>1.3 Describe possible key long-term complications to health as a result of having diabetes</p> <p>1.4 Explain what is meant by the term hyperglycaemia</p> <p>1.5 Explain what is meant by the term hypoglycaemia</p> <p>1.6 Explain the procedure of referring an individual with diabetes to others</p>
<p>2 Know the most common types of diabetes and their causes</p>	<p>2.1 Describe key features of Type 1 diabetes</p> <p>2.2 Describe key features of Type 2 diabetes</p> <p>2.3 List the most common possible causes of diabetes: Type 1 Type 2</p> <p>2.4 Describe the likely signs and symptoms of diabetes</p> <p>2.5 Outline contributing risk factors that may lead to the development of Type 2 diabetes</p>
<p>3 Understand how to implement a person-centred approach when supporting individuals with diabetes</p>	<p>3.1 Define person-centred support</p> <p>3.2 Explain the importance of using individualised care plans to support individuals with diabetes</p>

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
	<p>3.3 Explain the care pathway for the individual with newly diagnosed Type 2 diabetes</p> <p>3.4 Explain what self-care skills are</p> <p>3.5 Explain how to work with an individual, and or their carer, to optimise self-care skills</p> <p>3.6 Explain the importance of supporting individuals to make informed decisions</p>
<p>4 Understand the nutritional needs of individuals with diabetes</p>	<p>4.1 Explain the principles of a balanced diet</p> <p>4.2 Analyse how different carbohydrates affect blood glucose level</p> <p>4.3 Explain the role of the nutritional plan and how to report any related problems</p>
<p>5 Understand factors relating to an individual's experience of diabetes</p>	<p>5.1 Describe how different individuals may experience living with diabetes</p> <p>5.2 Explain the impact that the attitudes and behaviours of others may have on an individual with diabetes</p> <p>5.3 Explain how an individual can manage their diabetes through different aspects of their lifestyle</p>
<p>6 Understand the importance of monitoring diabetes</p>	<p>6.1 Explain the importance of accurately measuring blood pressure when supporting individuals with diabetes</p> <p>6.2 Identify the normal parameters for blood pressure</p> <p>6.3 Explain the purpose of accurate blood glucose monitoring for individuals with diabetes</p> <p>6.4 State the normal blood glucose range</p>

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
	6.5 Explain the purpose of accurate urine monitoring for individuals with diabetes
	6.6 Describe the annual review checks needed to screen for long term complications
7 Understand the links between diabetes and other conditions	7.1 Explain the links between diabetes and: Dementia Depression Pregnancy

## Unit L/502/1212

### Introduction to the role and responsibilities of a Health Trainer

Learning Outcome - The learner will:		Assessment Criterion - The learner can:	
1	Understand the role of a Health Trainer	1.1	Describe the role of a Health Trainer
		1.2	Outline the role of the Health Trainer in the context of local and national health and wellbeing policies
		1.3	Describe the limits of the Health Trainer role
		1.4	Analyse the consequences of acting beyond competence as a Health Trainer
		1.5	Identify appropriate routes for referring matters beyond competence
		1.6	Identify individuals who can advise on the Health Trainer role
2	Understand legislation and policies related to the role of the Health Trainer	2.1	Identify the legislation that relates to the role of a Health Trainer
		2.2	Identify organisational policies and procedures
		2.3	Outline potential consequences of non-compliance to organisational policies, procedures and protocol
		2.4	Explain the importance of confidentiality
		2.5	Explain key issues relating to equality & diversity and anti-discriminatory practice
		2.6	Explain the importance of assessing and managing risks
		2.7	Identify risks to self and others
		2.8	Use organisational data collection, storage and retrieval systems
3	Collect accurate information on clients	3.1	Explain issues around handling confidential and sensitive information

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
	3.2 Explain the importance of systematic and accurate record keeping
	3.3 Record information in a systematic and accurate way to inform evaluation and future work
4 Manage and organise own time effectively	4.1 Agree working arrangements with a line manager
	4.2 Explain the importance of making realistic commitments
	4.3 Plan work to ensure that commitments are met
	4.4 Explain the importance of knowing who to seek guidance and advice from
	4.5 Complete records of work activities when needed
5 Improve own competence, knowledge and skills	5.1 Explain the benefits of improving own competence, knowledge and skills
	5.2 Identify areas for improvement of own competence
	5.3 Plan for improvement of own competence, knowledge and skills

## Unit R/502/1213

### Establishing and developing relationships with communities while working as a Health Trainer

Learning Outcome - The learner will:		Assessment Criterion - The learner can:	
1	Make contact with communities, organisations and groups	1.1	Identify people within a community to make contact with
		1.2	Explain the benefits and importance of making contact with different people, organisations and groups
		1.3	Use appropriate methods and styles of making contact with different people, organisations and groups
		1.4	Identify the most appropriate person to contact within an organisation.
		1.5	Explain the role of a Health Trainer to different people, organisations and groups
2	Collect accurate information on communities, organisations and groups	2.1	Identify services and sources of information
		2.2	Check that information is up to date and accurate
		2.3	Record information in a way that can be used in future work
		2.4	Explain the importance of regularly updating information and methods for achieving this
		2.5	Outline the consequences of using out of date or inaccurate information
3	Develop working relationships with communities	3.1	Develop working relationships within communities
		3.2	Explain the importance of demonstrating respect for others
		3.3	Explain the importance of clearly agreeing ways of keeping in contact and reporting back

**Learning Outcome - The learner will:****Assessment Criterion - The learner can:**

- 3.4 Explain the importance of fulfilling commitments
- 3.5 Identify potential barriers to developing working relationships within communities
- 3.6 Identify ways of referring matters or issues beyond the Health Trainer role to a more appropriate person

## Unit L/502/1226

### Enable individuals to change their behaviour to improve their health and wellbeing while working as a Health Trainer

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Encourage individuals to assess their behaviour	1.1 Help individuals to assess how their behaviour is affecting their health and wellbeing
	1.2 Help individuals to identify the changes needed to improve their health and wellbeing
	1.3 Use behaviour changes techniques to encourage individuals to identify their motivation for change and opportunities for change
	1.4 Help individuals to identify potential barriers to change and ways of managing them
2 Establish 1-1 relationships with clients	2.1 Explain the importance of establishing the ground rules for the relationship
	2.2 Establish ground rules for the relationship
	2.3 Build rapport with clients
	2.4 Identify the key factors to be considered when choosing a suitable environment for 1-1 contact
3 Develop Personal Health Plans for individuals	3.1 Support individuals to prioritise their goals
	3.2 Support individuals to identify SMART goals for changing their behaviour
	3.3 Support individuals to develop a Personal Health Plan
	3.4 Identify key individuals who will be involved in the Personal Health Plan
	3.5 Use a range of techniques to ensure that individuals receive the appropriate support
	3.6 Review and record individuals' progress in achieving their plan

<b>Learning Outcome - The learner will:</b>	<b>Assessment Criterion - The learner can:</b>
<p>4 Support individuals to achieve their plan</p>	<p>4.1 Take actions to help individuals achieve their goals</p> <p>4.2 Support individuals to develop confidence in achieving change</p> <p>4.3 Use methods to support individuals to strengthen their own motivation for change</p> <p>4.4 Explain how measures of behaviour are used in monitoring behaviour change</p> <p>4.5 Support individuals review their progress and adapt their Personal Health Plan</p> <p>4.6 Provide feedback, support and encouragements to individuals</p> <p>4.7 Recognise and value individuals' achievements.</p>
<p>5 Support individuals to establish and maintain change</p>	<p>5.1 Support individuals to prepare for setbacks</p> <p>5.2 Support individuals to manage setbacks</p> <p>5.3 Support individuals evaluate the effects of the changes implemented</p> <p>5.4 Support individuals to become their own health trainer</p> <p>5.5 Help individuals identify broader learning and development needs</p>
<p>6 Keep records of work in line with organisational procedures</p>	<p>6.1 Keep accurate and complete records of work with individuals</p> <p>6.2 Report problems and concerns to the line manager</p> <p>6.3 Work within own role and competences</p> <p>6.4 Explain the importance of working within own role and competences</p> <p>6.5 Explain the potential consequences of working outside own role and competences.</p>

## Unit J/504/1023

### Clinical Imaging Support Worker: Anatomy and Terminology

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Know how human anatomy is used in clinical imaging.	1.1 Describe the <b>principal bones</b> of the skeleton. 1.2 Explain a <b>range of joints</b> . 1.3 Explain surface and regional anatomy. 1.4 Explain the planes and lines used to divide the human body. 1.5 Explain how surface markings are used in clinical imaging.
2 Know terminology used in clinical imaging settings.	2.1 Explain terminology used in clinical imaging settings to include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• the meanings and usage of root words, prefixes and suffixes</li><li>• anatomical terms</li><li>• radiographic terms</li><li>• the meanings and usage of abbreviations.</li></ul>

## Unit D/504/1027 Clinical Imaging Support Worker: Fundamentals of Care

Learning Outcome - The learner will:		Assessment Criterion - The learner can:	
1	Understand how to work safely in a range of modalities in clinical imaging.	1.1	Explain how to work safely in a range of modalities in clinical imaging.
		1.2	Identify current local and national guidelines that apply to working in clinical imaging settings.
2	Understand the skills needed to provide care in clinical imaging settings.	2.1	Explain clinical imaging procedures.
		2.2	Explain how care is provided in clinical imaging settings to include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• the limits of the support worker role</li> <li>• preparing an imaging room</li> <li>• risk assessments</li> <li>• patient identification</li> <li>• support for patients before, during and after the procedure</li> <li>• the dignity and comfort of patients</li> <li>• who to contact for support and advice</li> <li>• stock checking.</li> </ul>
3	Be able to provide care in clinical imaging settings.	3.1	Demonstrate how to provide care in clinical imaging settings to include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• complying with current local and national guidelines</li> <li>• complying with the limits of the support worker role</li> <li>• using communication skills with patients and others</li> <li>• conducting a risk assessment in a clinical area</li> <li>• working as a member of a multidisciplinary team</li> <li>• preparing an imaging room</li> <li>• identifying patients</li> <li>• maintaining the dignity and comfort of patients</li> <li>• supporting patients preparing for and undergoing clinical imaging procedures</li> <li>• providing aftercare for patients</li> <li>• assessing stock levels for clinical imaging procedures.</li> </ul>
4	Be able to reflect on personal practice in working in clinical imaging settings.	4.1	Evaluate personal practice in working in clinical imaging settings.

## Unit F/504/1022

### Clinical Imaging Support Worker: Radiation Protection and Awareness

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Understand the use of ionising radiation.	1.1 Explain the characteristics of X-rays. 1.2 Define ionising radiation. 1.3 Explain the effects of ionising radiation. 1.4 Explain the risks and benefits of medical exposure to ionising radiation.
2 Understand a range of clinical imaging techniques.	2.1 Describe the principle imaging medium used in: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• MRI</li><li>• CT Scan</li><li>• Ultrasound</li><li>• Nuclear Medicine</li><li>• Conventional radiography.</li></ul>
3 Understand the legislation governing medical exposures.	3.1 Outline current Ionising Radiation (Medical Exposure) Regulations. 3.2 Explain current local policies and protocols used in clinical imaging settings to include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• the establishment of pregnancy</li><li>• working with speakers of languages other than Welsh or English.</li></ul>
4 Understand how radiation protection is used within the clinical imaging department.	4.1 Explain how radiation protection is used in a clinical imaging setting to include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• protecting self</li><li>• protecting others</li><li>• protecting the environment.</li></ul>

## Unit T/504/0997

### The Use of Contrast Media in Clinical Imaging

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Know types of contrast media used in clinical imaging.	1.1 Identify types of contrast media used in clinical imaging. 1.2 Explain the contraindications to using contrast media. 1.3 Identify when and how to obtain support when working with contrast media.
2 Understand why contrast media are used in clinical imaging.	2.1 Explain the function of contrast media. 2.2 Identify the appearance of the contrast media used on the image.
3 Understand how to care for patients undergoing contrast media imaging.	3.1 Explain the patient preparation required for contrast media imaging. 3.2 Describe the signs and symptoms of normal reactions to contrast media. 3.3 Describe the signs and symptoms of adverse reactions to contrast media. 3.4 Explain patient aftercare required in contrast media imaging.

## Unit Y/506/1406

# Speech and Language Support for 11-16s: From Theory into Practice

Learning Outcome - The learner will:		Assessment Criterion - The learner can:	
1	Understand the processes involved in communication and the link between language, learning, behaviour, and social and emotional development of 11-16s year olds.	1.1	Identify the processes involved in receptive and expressive language.
		1.2	Identify the strengths and weaknesses of the speech, language and communication skills of a student with whom they work.
		1.3	Analyse the links between the language, learning, behaviour, and social and emotional development of a student with whom they work.
2	Understand the role of non-verbal communication in the learning of 11-16s year olds.	2.1	Discuss the importance of non-verbal communication when communicating with a student with speech, language and communication difficulties.
3	Be able to use appropriate styles of interaction to promote the communication skills of 11-16s year olds.	3.1	Reflect on and analyse their personal style of interaction with a student.
		3.2	Evaluate the effect of changing an aspect of their interaction when supporting a student with whom they work.
		3.3	Evaluate the effect of providing appropriate feedback to a student.
4	Know how to apply practical strategies to improve the listening and attention skills of 11-16s year olds.	4.1	Assess the level of attention skills of a student with whom they work.
		4.2	Choose, implement and evaluate strategies to support the same student's ability to listen and attend to a learning activity.

<b>Learning Outcome - The learner will:</b>		<b>Assessment Criterion - The learner can:</b>	
5	Be able to encourage 11-16s year olds to use a range of memory strategies to improve their retention of information.	5.1	Support a student in choosing, applying and evaluating strategies to support their memory of information.
6	Know how to apply practical strategies to promote independent learning in 11-16s year olds.	6.1	Choose, implement and evaluate practical strategies to promote the independent learning of a student with whom they work.
7	Know how to monitor and apply practical strategies to support the receptive language skills of 11-16s year olds.	7.1	Choose, implement and evaluate practical strategies to support student's receptive language skills.
		7.2	Devise and implement an informal assessment of the receptive language skills of a student with whom they work.
		7.3	Give examples of differentiated language which enables students of varying abilities to access the curriculum.
8	Know how to promote the vocabulary development of 11-16s year olds.	8.1	Devise, implement and evaluate strategies to promote vocabulary development of students with whom they work.
9	Be able to use practical strategies to support the expressive language skills of 11-16s year olds.	9.1	Choose, implement and evaluate practical strategies to support the expressive language skills of students with whom they work.
10	Be able to identify and promote the social communication skills of 11-16s year olds.	10.1	Identify and summarise the social communication skills of a student with whom they work.
		10.2	Plan, implement and evaluate strategies to promote the social communication skills of a group of 11-16s year olds of varying abilities with whom they work.

<b>Learning Outcome - The learner will:</b>		<b>Assessment Criterion - The learner can:</b>	
11	Be able to apply strategies to support students with unclear speech.	11.1	Explain how to support and develop the clarity of a student's speech.
12	Understand the link between speech and literacy skills in 11-16s year olds.	12.1	Explain how difficulties with speech processing and communication skills are linked to literacy development in 11-16 year olds.
13	Know how to support a group of 11-16s year olds with a range of speech, language and communication needs to positively engage in learning activities.	13.1	Explain how practical skills and knowledge can be used to support a group of 11-16s year olds with a range of speech, language, communication and learning needs in a chosen situation.
14	Be able to evaluate changes in personal practice.	14.1	Identify and evaluate changes in personal practice as a result of gaining practical skills and knowledge

## Unit D/506/1407

### Speech and Language Support for 5-11s: From Theory into Practice

Learning Outcome - The learner will:		Assessment Criterion - The learner can:	
1	Understand the processes involved in communication and the link between language, learning, behaviour, and social and emotional development of 5-11 year olds.	1.1	Identify the processes involved in receptive and expressive language.
		1.2	Identify the strengths and weaknesses of the speech, language and communication skills of a child with whom they work.
		1.3	Analyse the links between the language, learning, behaviour, and social and emotional development of a child with whom they work.
2	Understand the role of non-verbal communication in the learning of 5-11 year olds.	2.1	Reflect on a learning situation they have been involved in with a child and analyse the aspects of non-verbal communication.
		2.2	Discuss the importance of non-verbal communication when communicating with a child with speech, language and communication difficulties.
3	Know how to apply practical strategies to improve the listening and attention skills of 5-11 year olds	3.1	Assess the level of attention skills of a child with whom they work.
		3.2	Choose, implement and evaluate strategies to support the same child's ability to listen and attend to a learning activity.
4	Know how to apply practical strategies to promote independent learning in 5-11 year olds.	4.1	Choose, implement and evaluate practical strategies to promote the independent learning of a child with whom they work.
5	Know how to monitor and apply practical strategies to develop the receptive language skills of 5-11 year olds.	5.1	Choose, implement and evaluate practical strategies to support and develop children's receptive language skills.
		5.2	Devise and implement two informal assessments using two different models of receptive language development with

<b>Learning Outcome - The learner will:</b>		<b>Assessment Criterion - The learner can:</b>	
			a young child or children with whom they work.
		5.3	Give examples of differentiated language which enables children of varying abilities to access the curriculum.
6	Understand how to promote the vocabulary development of 5-11 year olds through multi-sensory learning.	6.1	Devise, implement and evaluate the use of multi-sensory strategies to promote vocabulary development of children with whom they work.
7	Be able to use practical strategies to develop the expressive language skills of 5-11 year olds.	7.1	Choose, implement and evaluate practical strategies to support the expressive language skills of children with whom they work.
8	Be able to use appropriate styles of adult-child interaction to promote the communication skills of 5-11 year olds.	8.1	Reflect on and analyse their personal style of adult-child interaction.
		8.2	Evaluate the effect of changing an aspect of their adult-child interaction when supporting a 5-11 year old child with whom they work.
9	Be able to identify and promote the social communication skills of 5-11 year olds.	9.1	Identify and summarise the social communication skills of a child with whom they work.
		9.2	Plan, implement and evaluate strategies to promote the social communication skills of a group of 5-11 year olds of varying abilities with whom they work.
10	Be able to apply theoretical knowledge to support children with articulation and phonological difficulties.	10.1	Explain how difficulties with speech processing and other factors can cause unclear speech.
		10.2	Explain how to support and develop the clarity of a child's speech.
11	Understand the link between speech and literacy skills in 5-11 year olds.	11.1	Explain how speech processing and communication skills are linked to literacy development of 5-11 year olds.
12	Know how to support a group of 5-11 year olds with a range of speech,	12.1	Explain how practical skills and knowledge gained can be used to support

<b>Learning Outcome - The learner will:</b>		<b>Assessment Criterion - The learner can:</b>	
	language and communication needs to positively engage in learning activities.		a group of 5-11 year olds with a range of speech, language, communication and learning needs in a chosen situation.
13	Be able to evaluate changes in personal practice.	13.1	Identify and evaluate changes in personal practice as a result of gaining practical skills and knowledge.

## Unit K/506/1409

# Communication Support for 0-25s with Severe and Complex Needs: From Theory into Practice

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Be able to identify the stage of communication of individuals with severe and complex communication needs.	1.1 Identify the stage of communication development of an individual, justifying their decision with evidence.
2 Be able to use appropriate styles of interaction to promote the communication skills of individuals with severe and complex communication needs.	2.1 Reflect on and analyse their personal style of interaction when supporting an individual with severe and complex communication needs.  2.2 Evaluate the effect of changing an aspect of interaction when supporting an individual with severe and complex communication needs.
3 Be able to record detailed observations of individuals at varying levels of communication.	3.1 Record, interpret and evaluate examples of the communication of individuals with severe and complex communication needs checking for consistent patterns in varied situations.
4 Know how to use appropriate strategies and activities to promote the communication skills of individuals with severe and complex communication needs.	4.1 Use and evaluate activities and strategies to support individuals with severe and complex communication needs of varying abilities.
5 Understand the meaning of key terms used within the field of severe communication difficulties.	5.1 Define and explain the importance of key terms used within the field of severe communication difficulties.
6 Be able to promote choice-making by individuals with severe and complex communication needs.	6.1 Analyse the level of choice-making skills of individuals with severe and complex communication needs.

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
	6.2 Plan and evaluate choice making opportunities for individuals with severe and complex communication needs.
7 Understand how play and/or exploring the environment is linked to the development of language and communication.	7.1 Identify and compare the levels of play or exploratory and communication skills of an individual with severe and complex needs, justifying their decision with evidence.
	7.2 Implement and evaluate activities to promote exploratory learning to support communication.
	7.3 Discuss the advantages and disadvantages of natural and structured contexts in promoting the communication skills of individuals with severe and complex communication needs.
8 Be able to devise an accessible plan to promote the communication skills of individuals with severe and complex communication needs.	8.1 Plan strategies to support individuals with severe and complex communication needs, making the information easy to share with other carers.
9 Be able to evaluate changes in personal practice.	9.1 Identify and evaluate changes in personal practice as a result of gaining practical skills and knowledge.

## Unit J/501/5988

# Communication and relationships to promote the wellbeing and mental health of older people

Learning Outcome - The learner will:	Assessment Criterion - The learner can:
1 Explain the principles that underpin effective communication and relationships	1.1 explain the importance of effective communication and relationships 1.2 identify the factors that may impact on communication and relationships and create barriers 1.3 identify key principles from theories relating to communication that can be useful in achieving effective communication and relationships 1.4 Identify key principles to promote effective two-way communication
2 Apply principles in promoting effective communication and building relationships	2.1 explain how to take an active approach to promoting communication and relationships where there are communication barriers 2.2 investigate sources of specialist support for communication and relationships 2.3 apply key communication skills



ProQual Awarding Body  
ProQual House  
Annie Med Lane  
South Cave  
HU15 2HG

Tel: 01430 423822

[www.proqualab.com](http://www.proqualab.com)

[enquiries@proqualab.com](mailto:enquiries@proqualab.com)